



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Edms T918,93, 850



Harvard College Library

THE GIFT OF

GINN AND COMPANY

DECEMBER 26, 1923



3 2044 097 058 358



The Students' Series of Latin Classics

# A FIRST BOOK IN LATIN

BY

HIRAM TUELL, A.M.,

PRINCIPAL OF THE MILTON (MASS.) HIGH SCHOOL

AND

HAROLD NORTH FOWLER, PH.D.

PROFESSOR IN THE WESTERN RESERVE UNIVERSITY; FORMERLY PROFESSOR  
OF LATIN IN THE PHILLIPS EXETER ACADEMY



LEACH, SHEWELL, & SANBORN

BOSTON. NEW YORK. CHICAGO

Edms T 918, 93, 860  
✓

**HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GIFT OF  
GINN AND COMPANY  
DEC. 26, 1928**

**COPYRIGHT, 1898,  
BY HIRAM TUELL AND HAROLD NORTH FOWLER.**

**Northwood Press :  
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith  
Boston, Mass., U.S.A.,**

## PREFACE.

---

THE vocabulary of this book contains about seven hundred words, exclusive of proper names.

Although a few words not found in Cæsar have been used as material for paradigms, illustrations, and sentences on familiar subjects, by far the greater part of the vocabulary has been selected from the first four books of the *Gallic War*. Indeed, nearly every word which Cæsar uses six or more times in these four books will be found here; and they form so large a proportion of the text of Cæsar that a pupil who has mastered the vocabulary of this book will find himself familiar with eighty-five per cent of the words on an average page of the *Gallic War*.

To ensure the acquisition of the vocabulary, every word when first introduced is used in at least three consecutive chapters; and the small number of words has compelled their more frequent repetition in later chapters.

The illustrative sentences — which in all cases precede the rules of syntax — contain, with few exceptions, only words already found in the exercises.



Each principle of syntax appears in at least three successive chapters when first introduced, and is afterwards frequently repeated.

The development of the verb is slow, and carefully graded with reference to the difficulty of acquirement.

The exercises on forms are designed to be easy drill-exercises, and contain no new words. They are numerous, and are capable of indefinite expansion at the will of the teacher.

The carefully graded reading lessons, beginning with Chapter XXX., contain the story of the first book of the *Gallic War*, and so prepare the pupil to begin the reading of Cæsar at the second book, with a proper understanding of the previous narrative; or at the first, with such a knowledge of its contents as to remove many of its difficulties. Few words are used which have not already occurred in the exercises; and whenever new words are introduced, their translation is given in parenthesis.

The illustrations and exercises of Chapter LXI. (on indirect discourse) can be omitted without causing inconvenience in the use of the rest of the book.

The derivation and composition of words are treated more fully than is usual in books for beginners, in the hope that a simple presentation of important parts of these subjects may lighten the pupil's subsequent labors.

It is expected that the book will prove easier than the ordinary first book, on account of its small vocabulary

and careful gradation, and will contribute far more to the rapidity and pleasure of later progress in consequence of the principle which has guided the selection of the words and the more thorough mastery of their meanings.

We desire to acknowledge our indebtedness to Henry Snyder, A.M., Superintendent of the Schools of Jersey City, who made valuable contributions in the earlier stages of the work, and to Professor E. M. Pease, of Leland Stanford Junior University, editor-in-chief of this series, whose criticisms and suggestions at every stage have been very helpful.

HIRAM TUELL.

HAROLD N. FOWLER.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. Introductory Matter . . . . .	1
II. First Declension. — <i>Subject and Direct Object</i> . . . .	8
III. First Declension ( <i>continued</i> ). — <i>Genitive with Nouns</i> .	11
IV. Present Indicative of <b>Sum</b> . — <i>Agreement of Verbs</i> . .	12
V. <i>Predicate Noun and Appositive</i> . . . . .	14
VI. Second Declension: Nouns in <i>-us</i> . — <i>Indirect Object</i> .	16
VII. Second Declension: Nouns in <i>-um</i> . — <i>Adjectives in</i> <i>-us, -a, -um</i> . — <i>Agreement of Adjectives</i> . . . . .	18
VIII. Second Declension: Nouns in <i>-er</i> and <i>-ir</i> . — Imperfect Indicative of <b>Sum</b> . . . . .	21
IX. Adjectives in <i>-er</i> . — Future Indicative of <b>Sum</b> . — <i>Dative of Possessor</i> . . . . .	23
X. Third Declension: Mute Stems . . . . .	26
XI. Third Declension: Mute Stems ( <i>continued</i> ). — First Conjugation: Present Indicative Active . . . . .	28
XII. Third Declension: Liquid Stems. — First Conjugation: Imperfect Indicative Active . . . . .	31
XIII. Third Declension ( <i>continued</i> ). — First Conjugation: Future Indicative Active. — <i>Ablative of Instrument</i> . . .	34
XIV. Third Declension: Stems in <i>-i</i> . — First Conjugation: Perfect Indicative Active. — Perfect Indicative of <b>Sum</b> . — <i>Ablative of Manner</i> . . . . .	36
XV. Third Declension: Stems in <i>-i</i> ( <i>continued</i> ). — First Conjugation: Pluperfect and Future-Perfect Indicative Active. — Pluperfect and Future-Perfect Indicative of <b>Sum</b> . — <i>Ablative of Accompaniment</i> .	40
XVI. Third Declension: Mixed Stems. — <i>Ablative of Time</i> .	44
XVII. Third Declension. — Rules for Gender . . . . .	47

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXVIII. Adjectives of Three Terminations. — First Conjugation: Present Indicative Passive. — <i>Ablative of Agent</i> . . . . .	50
XIX. Adjectives of Two Terminations. — First Conjugation: Imperfect Indicative Passive. — <i>Ablative of Cause</i> . . . . .	53
XX. Adjectives of One Termination. — First Conjugation: Future Indicative Passive. — <i>Ablative of Specification</i> . . . . .	56
XXI. First Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive. — <i>Descriptive Ablative</i> . . . . .	59
XXII. Comparison of Adjectives. — Declension of Comparatives. — <i>Ablative with Comparatives</i> . . .	62
XXIII. Comparison of Adjectives ( <i>continued</i> ). — <i>Partitive Genitive</i> . . . . .	65
XXIV. Irregular Comparison ( <i>continued</i> ). — <i>Ablative of Degree of Difference</i> . . . . .	68
XXV. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs . . . . .	71
XXVI. Fourth Declension. — Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Active . . . . .	73
XXVII. Second Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active. — <i>Dative with Adjectives</i> . . . . .	75
XXVIII. Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active . . . . .	77
XXIX. Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Passive. — Fifth Declension . . . . .	79
XXX. Second Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive. — Nine Irregular Adjectives. — Reading Lesson . . . . .	82
XXXI. Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive . . . . .	85
XXXII. Third Conjugation: Present Indicative Active. — Cardinal Numerals. — <i>Accusative of Extent</i> . — Reading Lesson . . . . .	87
XXXIII. Third Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active. — Ordinal Numerals . . . . .	92

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ix

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXIV. Third Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active. — Personal and Reflexive Pronouns. — Reading Lesson .	94
XXXV. Third Conjugation: Present and Imperfect Passive. — Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	99
XXXVI. Third Conjugation: Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive. — Reading Lesson . . . . .	101
XXXVII. Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	104
XXXVIII. Demonstrative Pronouns ( <i>continued</i> ). — Reading Lesson . . . . .	106
XXXIX. Fourth Conjugation: Present Indicative Active. — Relative Pronouns . . . . .	109
XL. Fourth Conjugation: Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active. — Interrogative Pronouns. — Reading Lesson . . . . .	112
XLI. Fourth Conjugation: Passive Voice. — Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	115
XLII. Infinitives of <b>Sum</b> : Infinitives of First and Second Conjugations. — <i>Indirect Discourse</i> ( <i>Oratio Obliqua</i> ): <i>Subject of the Infinitive</i> . — Reading Lesson . . . . .	118
XLIII. Infinitives of Third and Fourth Conjugations. — <i>Expressions of Place</i> . . . . .	122
XLIV. Verbs in <i>-io</i> of the Third Conjugation. — Reading Lesson . . . . .	125
XLV. Participles . . . . .	128
XLVI. Deponent Verbs. — Reading Lesson . . . . .	130
XLVII. <b>Possum</b> . — <i>Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse</i> .	133
XLVIII. Compounds of <b>Sum</b> . — <i>Dative with Compounds</i> . — Reading Lesson . . . . .	136
XLIX. <i>Dative with Intransitive Verbs</i> . . . . .	138
L. <b>Ferō</b> and Compounds of <b>Ferō</b> . — Reading Lesson	140
LII. Irregular Verbs <b>Volō</b> , <b>Nōlō</b> , and <b>Mālō</b> . . .	143
LII. Irregular Verbs <b>Eō</b> and <b>Fiō</b> . — <i>Two Datives</i> . — Reading Lesson . . . . .	145

CHAPTER	PAGE
LIII. Derivation and Composition of Words . . . . .	148
LIV. Subjunctive Mood. — <i>Sequence of Tenses</i> . — <i>Indirect Questions</i> . . . . .	152
LV. First Conjugation: Subjunctive Active. — <i>Clauses of Purpose (Final Clauses)</i> . — Reading Lesson . . . . .	155
LVI. First Conjugation: Subjunctive Passive. — <i>Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses)</i> . . . . .	158
LVII. Second Conjugation: Subjunctive Mood. — <i>Purpose and Result Clauses (continued)</i> . — Reading Lesson . . . . .	160
LVIII. <i>Imperative Constructions</i> . — <i>Wishes</i> . . . . .	163
LIX. Third Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive. — <i>Conditional Sentences</i> . — Reading Lesson . . . . .	166
LX. Fourth Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive. — <i>Clauses with Cum</i> . . . . .	172
LXI. Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs. — <i>Indirect Discourse</i> . — Reading Lesson . . . . .	176
LXII. Participles ( <i>Review</i> ). — <i>Ablative Absolute</i> . . . . .	181
LXIII. Gerund and Gerundive. — Reading Lesson . . . . .	185
LXIV. Supine. — <i>Expressions of Purpose</i> . . . . .	189
LXV. Periphrastic Conjugations. — <i>Dative of Agent</i> . — Reading Lesson . . . . .	193
SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT-READING . . . . .	199
PARADIGMS OF VERBS . . . . .	205
VOCABULARIES . . . . .	229

# A FIRST BOOK IN LATIN.



## CHAPTER I.

### Introduction.

#### 1. ALPHABET.

The Latin alphabet has twenty-four letters: A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V,<sup>1</sup> X, Y, Z. It is the same as the English, with the omission of J and W. The letter I does duty for both I and J.

#### 2. VOWELS.

The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*. They are either *long* (—), *short* (˘), or *common* (˜); that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

All the long vowels will be marked in this book. Unmarked vowels are to be regarded as short.

#### 3. CONSONANTS.

The consonants may be classified as follows: —

Mutes:  $\begin{cases} p, b, \text{ are } p \text{ mutes.} \\ t, d, \text{ are } t \text{ mutes.} \\ k, c, g, q, \text{ are } k \text{ mutes.} \end{cases}$

---

<sup>1</sup> In pronunciation the Romans made *u* and *v* very much alike, and in many books *u* is printed for *v* and V for U. In fact, V is merely a consonant U. In this book, however, *u* and *v* are both used.



Liquids: *l, m, n, r.*

Spirants: *f, i* consonant, *s, v*; *s* is also a sibilant.

Double consonants: *x = cs* or *gs*, *z = ds*.

*H* is only the sign of a rough breathing.

### Pronunciation.

NOTE. — Latin is now pronounced differently in different countries. English-speaking people use either the *Roman* or the *English* method.

#### 4. ROMAN METHOD.

##### 1. Vowels.

*ā* has the sound of *a* in *father*.

*ē* has the sound of *e* in *fête* (like *a* in *fate*).

*ī* has the sound of *i* in *machine*.

*ō* has the sound of *o* in *holy*.

*ū* has the sound of *oo* in *boot*.

*y* is rare. It was pronounced like *u* in French, or *ü* in German; that is, half-way between the sounds of *ī* and *ū*, as given above.

The short vowels have the same sound as the corresponding long ones, but require less time for utterance.

So *ă* is like *a* in *staff* (pronounced broadly).

*ĕ* is like *e* in *met*.

*ĭ* is like *i* in *pick*.

*ŏ* is like *o* in *wholly*.

*ŭ* is like *oo* in *book*.

##### 2. Diphthongs.

*ae* has the sound of *ai* in *aisle*.

*au* has the sound of *ow* in *how*.

*ei* (rare) has the sound of *ei* in *eight*.

*eu* (rare) has the sound of *eu* in *feud*.

*oe* has the sound of *oi* in *boil*.

For *ui*, sometimes improperly called a diphthong, see 4, 6.

### 3. Consonants.

Consonants have generally the same sounds as in English, but

*c* has always the sound of *c* in *can*.

*g* has always the sound of *g* in *game*.

*i* consonant has always the sound of *y* in *yet*.

*s* has always the sound of *s* in *son* or *yes*.<sup>1</sup>

*t* has always the sound of *t* in *tone*.<sup>2</sup>

*v* has always the sound of *w* in *we*.

*ch* has always the sound of *k*.

### 4. Syllables.

In a Latin word there are as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *a-gri-co-la*, *farmer*. A single consonant between two vowels belongs in the syllable with the following vowel: *a-mā-bam*, *I was loving*.

Two or more consonants between two vowels belong with the following vowel, if they can be pronounced with it:<sup>3</sup> *cō-gnō-scō*, *I recognize*; *in-du-stri-a*, *diligence*; *ne-gle-gen-ti-a*, *carelessness*; *for-tis*, *brave*; *al-tis-si-mus*, *highest*; *pu-el-la*, *girl*; *dī-xit*, *he said*.

Compound words are divided into their component parts, *sub-it*, *under he goes*.

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*, the syllable before the last the *penult*, and the syllable before the penult the *antepenult*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Never soft nor like *sh*.

<sup>2</sup> Never like *t* in *nation*.

<sup>3</sup> In other words, any combination of consonants that begins a Latin word can begin a syllable.

<sup>4</sup> *Ultima* is the Latin word for *last*; *penult* is shortened from *paene ultima*, *almost the last*; and *antepenult* means *before the penult*.

5. *Quantity of Vowels.*

NOTE. — In many instances the quantity of vowels can be learned only by observation, but the following rules will prove useful.

A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short: *vi-a, road*; *ni-hil, nothing*.

A vowel before *nd* or *nt* is short.

Diphthongs, and vowels produced by contraction are long: *nau-ta, sailor*; *oō-gō* (for *oōgō*), *I collect*.

A vowel before *nf*, *ns*, *gn*, *gn*, and consonant *i*, is long: *cōnfer, compare*; *amāns, loving*; *āgmen, line of march*; *cōgnōscō, recognize*; *cūius, of whom*.

6. *Quantity of Syllables.*

A syllable is long by nature when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: *mā-ter, mother*; *Cae-sar, Caesar*.

A syllable is long by position when it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants<sup>1</sup> or *x* or *z*: *men-tis, of the mind*; *dux, leader*.

A syllable is common when it contains a short vowel followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a-grī, fields*.

After *g*, *ng*, and sometimes *s*, also in *cui* (from *qui* and *quis*) and *huic* (from *hic*), *u* is pronounced together with the preceding letter, as in the English *queen*. It has no effect upon the quantity of the syllable in which or after which it stands: *ali-cui, to any one*; *un-guī-nis, of fat*; *quīs, who* (interrogative); *qui, who* (relative); *cōn-suē-scō, I am accustomed*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Observe that a long syllable does not necessarily contain a long vowel. In *mēnsa, table*, the *e* is long; the word is therefore to be pronounced *main-sa*. In *mentis, of the mind*, the *e* is short, and the word is pronounced *mēn-tis*. The letter *h* is not a consonant, and does not affect the length of syllables.

7. *Accent.*

Words of two syllables are accented on the penult: *pa'-ter, father*; *mā'-ter, mother*.

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult when that is long; otherwise on the antepenult: *ca-pel'-la, a goat*; *e-pi'-stu-la, a letter*; *ts'-ne-brae, darkness*.

A few short words called enclitics are added to the end of other words. The accent then falls upon the syllable before the enclitic: *ego'que, and I*; *ibis'ne, shall you go?*

## 5.

## ENGLISH METHOD.

Latin is pronounced by the English method just as if the words were English. The rules for quantity and accent are the same as in the Roman method, but the rules for quantity are generally disregarded except in so far as they affect the accent. In dividing words into syllables those who adopt the English pronunciation should observe the following rules:—

1. A single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r* following a penultimate or any unaccented vowel belongs with the following vowel: *pa-ter, father*; *re-gi-na, queen*; *ma-tro-na, matron*.

2. A single consonant belongs with any preceding accented vowel, not penultimate, except *u*, but not when *e* or *i* before another vowel follows: *dom-i-nus, master*; but *mo-ne-o, I advise*.

3. In all other cases two or more consonants between two vowels are separated: *cor-pus, body*; *im-pro-bus, wicked*.

## 6.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

The kinds of words used in language are called parts of speech. They are the noun, the adjective, the pronoun,

the verb, and the particles, which include the adverb, the preposition, the conjunction, and the interjection.

## 7.

## GENDER.

The names of males, rivers, winds, and months are masculine: *Caesar*, *Caesar*; *vir*, *man*; *Rhēnus*, *Rhine*; *Notus*, *South wind*; *Iānuārius*, *January*.

The names of females, countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine: *Iūlia*, *Julia*; *filia*, *daughter*; *Ītalia*, *Italy*; *Rōma*, *Rome*; *Britannia*, *Britain*; *pōpulus*, *poplar*.

Indeclinable nouns are neuter: *nihil*, *nothing*.

Special rules will be given later.

## 8.

## INFLECTION.

The relations between words are denoted in English for the most part by means of prepositions and auxiliaries or by the order of the words. When we say *the master of the house*, the relation between *master* and *house* is denoted by the preposition *of*; when we say *the dog bites the man*, the relation between the *dog*, the *act of biting*, and the *man*, is denoted by the order of the words; for if the order is reversed, the relations are also reversed. When we say *I love him*, the forms of the words show the relations. In Latin the relations between words are denoted almost exclusively by the forms of the words themselves, the forms being different according to the relations to be expressed. The changes in form which a word undergoes to denote different relations constitute the *Inflection* of the word. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, is called *Declension*; the inflection of verbs is called *Conjugation*.

### 1. *Declension.*

Declined words have in Latin seven cases: *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative, and Locative.*

The Nominative is the case of the subject of the sentence.

The Genitive is used to denote possession and some other relations, and is most frequently to be rendered by *of* in English.

The Dative is the case of the indirect object, and is most frequently to be rendered by *to* or *for*.

The Accusative is the case of the direct object.

The Vocative is the case of the person addressed. It has almost always the same form as the Nominative.

The Ablative expresses various relations to be expressed in English by prepositions; as, *from, with, by, in, etc.*

The Locative case denotes the place in which. This case exists only in names of towns and a few other words, and has generally the same form as the Dative or Ablative, sometimes that of the Genitive.

There are five ways of declining nouns; hence there are said to be five declensions.

Adjectives and pronouns are also declined, but with different forms for different genders.

### 2. *Conjugation.*

Latin verbs have three moods, Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative; also Infinitives, Participles, Gerund, Gerundive, and Supines.

The tenses of verbs in Latin are the same as in English: Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect.

There are in Latin, as in English, two voices, the Active and the Passive.

## 9.

## NUMBER.

In Latin, as in English, there are two numbers, *Singular* and *Plural*. Inflected words have in Latin different forms for the two numbers.



## CHAPTER II.

First or *a*-Declension.

## 10.

## PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N.</i> mēnsa, a table.	mēnsae, tables.
<i>G.</i> mēnsae, of a table.	mēnsārum, of tables.
<i>D.</i> mēnsae, to or for a table.	mēnsis, to or for tables.
<i>Ac.</i> mēnsam, table.	mēnsās, tables.
<i>V.</i> mēnsa, thou table.	mēnsae, ye tables.
<i>Ab.</i> mēnsā, from, by, with, etc., a table.	mēnsis, from, by, with, etc., tables.

1. In the above paradigm which cases are alike?
2. What is the quantity of final *a* in the nominative singular?
3. The cases are formed by adding endings to a common part, called the stem.
4. In the first declension the stem ends in *ā*. This

final *ā* of the stem is called the stem-vowel<sup>1</sup> or characteristic.

5. The stem-vowel joined with the case-ending forms the termination.

6. The stem is *mēnsā*, and may be found by dropping the ending *-rum* of the genitive plural.

7. Make a table of terminations from the paradigm above, and commit them to memory.

8. GENDER. — Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males.

## 11.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>Cornēlia</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Cornelia.	<b>amat</b> , he, she, or it loves.
<b>domina</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , mistress.	<b>amant</b> , they love.
<b>epistula</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , letter.	<b>laudat</b> , he, she, or it praises
<b>fābula</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , story.	<b>laudant</b> , they praise.
<b>Iūlia</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Julia.	<b>habet</b> , he, she, or it has.
<b>mēnsa</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , table.	<b>habent</b> , they have.
<b>pictūra</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , picture.	<b>nārrat</b> , he, she, or it tells.
<b>puella</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , girl.	<b>nārrant</b> , they tell.
<b>rēgina</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , queen.	<b>et, conj.</b> , and.
<b>rosa</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , rose.	<b>quid</b> , what?
<b>serva</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , female servant, slave.	

Decline the nouns in the vocabulary like *mēnsa*.

## 12.

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

- |                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>Rēgina Iūliam amat,</b> | } <i>the queen loves Julia.</i> |
| <b>Iūliam rēgina amat,</b> |                                 |
| <b>Amat Iūliam rēgina,</b> |                                 |
- |                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>Iūlia amat rēginam,</b> | } <i>Julia loves the queen.</i> |
| <b>Rēginam amat Iūlia,</b> |                                 |
| <b>Amat rēginam Iūlia,</b> |                                 |

<sup>1</sup> The stem-vowel does not usually appear, and sometimes the case-ending is lost.



3. { Epistulās Iūlia habet,  
Iūlia epistulās habet,  
Habet epistulās Iūlia, } *Julia has the letters.*
4. { Puella pictūram habet,  
Pictūram habet puella,  
Pictūram puella habet, } *the girl has a picture.*

Notice in the above sentences that *a*, *an*, or *the* is used in the translation whenever the sense requires it, but that there are no corresponding Latin words. Notice, also, that the subject is in the nominative, and the object in the accusative.

**13. RULE.** — *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.*

**14. RULE.** — *The direct object is in the accusative.*

### 15.

#### EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Puella fābulam nārrat. 2. Rēgīna puellās laudat.  
3. Servae dominam amant. 4. Domina servās laudat.  
5. Puellae Iūliam laudant. 6. Cornēlia et Iūlia epistulās habent. 7. Domina mēnsam et pictūram habet.  
8. Puellae fābulās nārrant. 9. Quid habet Cornēlia?  
10. Rosam habet.

- II. 1. Cornelia tells stories. 2. She praises the servant. 3. The girls have roses. 4. They praise the queen. 5. The girl has a letter. 6. Julia has a table and pictures. 7. The servant loves the mistress. 8. The queen praises Julia and Cornelia. 9. The servants love the girls. 10. What have the girls?

## CHAPTER III.

First or *a*-Declension. — Continued.*Genitive with Nouns.*

## 16. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puella bonam rēginam amat**, *the girl loves the good queen.*
2. **Rēgina bona servās habet**, *the good queen has servants.*
3. **Iūlia servam Cornēliae laudat**, *Julia praises Cornelia's servant (the servant of Cornelia).*
4. **Rēgina rosae pictūram laudat**, *the queen praises the picture of the rose.*

Notice that the adjectives have the same terminations as their nouns, and that the adjective<sup>1</sup> may precede or follow its noun. Notice, also, that *Cornēliae* limits *servam*, and does not mean the same person; that *rosae* limits *pictūram*, and does not mean the same thing; and that *Cornēliae* and *rosae* are in the genitive.

**17. RULE.** — *A noun limiting another noun and not meaning the same person or thing is in the genitive.*

## 18. VOCABULARY.

<b>agricola</b> , -ae, <i>m.</i> , farmer.	<b>poēta</b> , -ae, <i>m.</i> , poet.
<b>āla</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , wing.	<b>alba</b> , white.
<b>columba</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , dove.	<b>bona</b> , good.
<b>filia</b> , <sup>2</sup> -ae, <i>f.</i> , daughter.	<b>fīda</b> , faithful, trusty.
<b>nauta</b> , -ae, <i>m.</i> , sailor.	<b>longa</b> , long.
<b>patria</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , native land.	

1. Notice the gender of each noun in the above vocabulary. See 10. 8.

<sup>1</sup> The adjective when emphatic precedes its substantive, otherwise it follows it. It more often precedes.

<sup>2</sup> The dative and ablative plural of *filia* is usually *filīabus*.

2. The adjectives given above are to be used only with feminine nouns, and are to be declined like *mēnsa*.

3. Decline together *bona puella, rosa alba, fida serva*.

**19.****EXERCISE.**

I. 1. Poēta bonam fābulam nārrat. 2. Agricolae fidās servās laudant. 3. Filia agricolae albam columbam habet. 4. Rēgīna bonam puellam amat. 5. Filiae nautārum longās epistulās habent. 6. Nautae longās fābulās nārrant. 7. Columba albās ālās habet. 8. Puella poētārum fābulās laudat. 9. Domina Iūliae mēnsam longam habet. 10. Nauta patriam amat.

II. 1. Poets tell good stories. 2. Cornelia loves the good daughter of the sailor. 3. The queen's daughter has pictures. 4. The faithful girl loves the good queen. 5. The poet praises the good girl's letter. 6. The sailor tells a good story. 7. Julia has faithful servants. 8. What has the farmer's daughter? 9. She has a white rose. 10. The girls praise the poets of their native land.

**CHAPTER IV.****Present Indicative of Sum.***Agreement of Verbs.***20. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum*.****SINGULAR.**

First Person, *sum, I am.*

Second Person, *es, thou art.*

Third Person, *est, he, she, or it is.*

**PLURAL.**

*sumus, we are.*

*estis, you are.*

*sunt, they are.*

**21. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.**

1. *Puella rosās habet, the girl has roses.*
2. *Puellae rosās habent, the girls have roses.*
3. *Est bona, she is good.*
4. *Sumus fidae, we are faithful.*

Notice that the subjects in (3) and (4) are not expressed by separate words, but by the form of the verbs. Notice, also, that the verbs have different forms for subjects of different persons and numbers.

**22. RULE.** — *A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

**23. VOCABULARY.**

<i>aqua, -ae, f., water.</i>	<i>magna, large.</i>
<i>Britannia, -ae, f., Britain.</i>	<i>parva, small.</i>
<i>silva, -ae, f., forest, woods.</i>	<i>sum, I am.</i>
<i>grāta, welcome, pleasing.</i>	<i>in (prep. with abl.), in, on.</i>
<i>laeta, glad, cheerful.</i>	<i>sed, conj., but.</i>
<i>lāta, broad.</i>	<i>ubi, adv., where?</i>

**24. EXERCISES.**

I. 1. *Sumus laetae.* 2. *Estis bonae.* 3. *Silvae Britanniae sunt magnaē.* 4. *Ubi est aqua?* 5. *Aqua est in silvā.* 6. *Fabulae poetarum sunt gratae.* 7. *Agricolae<sup>1</sup> mensa est lata.* 8. *Alae columbarum sunt albae.* 9. *Es fida.* 10. *Rēgina filiam<sup>2</sup> parvam laudat.* 11. *Picturae sunt gratae.* 12. *Rēgina est in Britannia, sed filia est in patria.*

<sup>1</sup> The genitive when it is emphatic is put before the noun which it limits.

<sup>2</sup> The possessive pronouns *his, her, its, and their*, are often omitted in Latin, and must be supplied in translating.

II. 1. I am glad. 2. We are small. 3. Water is good. 4. You are faithful. 5. The sailor's letters are welcome. 6. The native land of the queen is large. 7. (There)<sup>1</sup> are broad forests in Britain. 8. The servants love (their) good mistress. 9. The poet tells a pleasing story. 10. (There) are doves in the forests. 11. What has the little girl? 12. She has a white dove. 13. The farmer is in the woods.



## CHAPTER V.

### Predicate Noun; Appositive.

#### 25. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Puella est serva, the girl is a slave.*
2. *Poëta est agricola, the poet is a farmer.*
3. *Iūlia est bona domina, Julia is a good mistress.*

Notice that *serva*, *agricola*, and *domina* are in the predicate and denote the same person as *puella*, *poëta*, and *Iūlia*. A noun thus used is called a *predicate noun*.

**26. RULE.** — *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.*

#### 27. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Poëta Iūliam filiam amat, the poet loves his daughter Julia.*
2. *Poëta servam Iūliae filiae laudat, the poet praises the servant of his daughter Julia.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Words in parenthesis are not to be expressed in Latin.

Notice that *filiam* denotes the same person as *Iuliam*, and is in the same case, but is not a predicate noun. Notice, also, that *filiae* denotes the same person as *Iuliae*, and is in the same case, but is not a predicate noun. Nouns thus used are called *appositives*.

**28. RULE.** — *The appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.*

**29.**

**VOCABULARY.**

<b>aquila</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , eagle.	<b>pecūnia</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , money, a sum of money.
<b>fēmina</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , woman.	<b>cāra</b> , dear.
<b>Galba</b> , -ae, <i>m.</i> , Galba.	<b>multa</b> , much ; <i>pl.</i> , many.
<b>Graecia</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Greece.	<b>vocat</b> , he calls.
<b>incola</b> , -ae, <i>m. and f.</i> , inhabitant.	<b>vocat</b> , they call.
<b>insula</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , island.	

**30.**

**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Es cāra filia. 2. Aquila est silvārum incola. 3. Graecia est poētārum patria. 4. Poēta filiam Cornēliam amat. 5. Ālae aquilārum sunt lātae. 6. Fēmina puellās parvās vocat. 7. Britannia est māgna insula. 8. Rēgīnae filia māgnam pecūniam habet. 9. Nautae filiae sunt fīdae servae. 10. Agricolae multās columbās habent. 11. Ubi est agricola Galba ?

II. 1. The queen is a good woman. 2. She praises (her) daughter Julia. 3. (There) are large forests in (my) native land. 4. The little girl calls (her) doves. 5. The inhabitants of the island are sailors. 6. Cornelia's letters are welcome. 7. The wings of the dove are long and white. 8. (There) is good water on the island. 9. I am a farmer, but you are a sailor. 10. The queen and (her) daughter Julia are glad.

## CHAPTER VI.

## Second or o-Declension: Nouns in -us.

*Indirect Object.*

31.

## PARADIGM.

**servus, m., slave.**

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N.	servus	servi
G.	servi	servōrum
D.	servō	servīs
Ac.	servum	servōs
V.	serve	servi
Ab.	servō	servīs

1. In the above paradigm, what cases are alike?
2. The stem ends in -ō; as, servō-.
3. The stem may be found by dropping the ending -rum of the genitive plural, and changing ō to ō.
4. Make a table of the terminations and commit them to memory.
5. GENDER. — Nouns in -us of the second declension are masculine.

32.

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Galba filiae fābulam nārrat**, *Galba tells a story to his daughter.*
2. **Nautae agricolis fābulās nārrant**, *the sailors tell stories to the farmers.*

Notice that *filiae* is in the dative and depends upon *nārrat*; and that *agricolis* is in the dative and depends upon *nārrant*. Such datives are called *indirect objects*.

**33. RULE.** — *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative.*

## 34.

## VOCABULARY.

**amicus**, -i, *m.*, friend.**diligentia**, -ae, *f.*, diligence.**dominus**, -i, *m.*, master (of servants).**equus**, -i, *m.*, horse.**filius**, -i, *m.*, son.**Helvētius**, -i, Helvetian; *as a noun*,  
a Helvetian.**hortus**, -i, *m.*, garden.**servus**, -i, *m.*, servant,  
slave.**Titus**, -i, *m.*, Titus.**dat**, he gives.**dant**, they give.

1. Each of the adjectives thus far introduced, when used with masculine nouns, has a masculine form declined like **servus**.

For the feminine form, see 18.

2. Decline together **bonus servus**, **hortus magnus**, **albus equus**.

## 35.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Amicus Galbae multos equos habet.** 2. **Equus albus est in horto agricolae.** 3. **Titus filio equum album dat.** 4. **Dominus bonos servos laudat.** 5. **Dominus servis fidei pecuniam dant.** 6. **Feminae diligentiam servarum laudant.** 7. **Filius agricolae magnum hortum habet.** 8. **Femina amico caris epistulam longam dat.** 9. **Nautae sunt amici reginae.** 10. **Ubi, Tite, est equus agricolae Galbae?** 11. **In horto est agricolae Galbae equus.**

II. 1. The slave has a good horse. 2. The islands of Greece are many. 3. He tells good stories to (his) friends. 4. They are friends of Titus. 5. There are many horses on the island. 6. The island is small, but it has many inhabitants. 7. The slaves praise (their) master's daughter. 8. The poet is an inhabitant of Britain. 9. He gives water to (his) friend's horses. 10. Eagles have broad wings.



## CHAPTER VII.

**Second or o-Declension: Nouns in -um;  
Adjectives in -us, -a, -um.**

*Agreement of Adjectives.***36.****PARADIGM.****bellum, n., war.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	bellum	bella
<i>G.</i>	belli	bellōrum
<i>D., Ab.</i>	bellō	bellis

1. The stem ends in *ō*; as, bellō.

2. GENDER. — Nouns in -um are neuter.

3. Each adjective thus far introduced, when used with a neuter noun, has a neuter form declined like bellum.

These adjectives are declined in full as follows:—

**37.****PARADIGM.****Bonus, good.**

	SINGULAR.	
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i> bonus	bona	bonum
<i>G.</i> bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>D.</i> bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Ac.</i> bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>V.</i> bone	bona	bonum
<i>Ab.</i> bonō	bonā	bonō

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>PLURAL.</i> <i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>G.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>D.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Ac.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>V.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Ab.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonis

### 38. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

- |                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Hortus est māgnus.  | 5. Dōnum est māgnum.    |
| 2. Hortī sunt māgnī.   | 6. Dōna sunt māgna.     |
| 3. Mēnsa est māgna.    | 7. Laetum nautam amat.  |
| 4. Mēnsae sunt māgnae. | 8. Laetōs nautās amant. |

Observe that each noun in the preceding sentences is limited by an adjective, and that each adjective has the same gender, number, and case as its noun. Notice especially *laetum* and *laetōs*.

**39. RULE.** — *An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.*

### 40. VOCABULARY.

bellum, -i, <i>n.</i> , war.	cēlat, he conceals.
concillium, <sup>1</sup> -ī, <i>n.</i> , meeting, council.	cēlant, they conceal.
dōnum, -i, <i>n.</i> , gift.	convocat, he calls together.
iniūria, -ae, <i>f.</i> , wrong.	convocant, they call together.
nūntius, <sup>1</sup> -ī, <i>m.</i> , a messenger.	culpat, he blames.
malus, -a, -um, bad.	culpant, they blame.
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman; as a noun, a Roman.	

<sup>1</sup> Nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* generally contract *īi* of the genitive singular into *i* without changing the accent.

Adjectives already used in the masculine or feminine: —

<b>albus, -a, -um.</b>	<b>laetus, -a, -um.</b>
<b>bonus, -a, -um.</b>	<b>lātus, -a, -um.</b>
<b>cārus, -a, -um.</b>	<b>longus, -a, -um.</b>
<b>fidus, -a, -um.</b>	<b>māgnus, -a, -um.</b>
<b>grātus, -a, -um.</b>	<b>multus, -a, -um.</b>
<b>Helvētius, -a, -um.</b>	<b>parvus, -a, -um.</b>

#### 41.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Malus servus in silvā equum domini cēlat.  
 2. Nūntius fidus concilium Rōmānōrum convocat. 3. Amīcīs multa dōna dat. 4. Domini iniūriās servōrum cēlant.  
 5. Nauta agricolae grātum dōnum dat. 6. Ālae columbārum albārum sunt māgnae. 7. Nūntius Rōmānōrum in conciliō Helvētiōs culpat. 8. Incolae Britanniae rēgīnam amant. 9. Bellum in Graeciā est māgnū. 10. In silvā sunt māgnae aquilae. 11. Ubi, amīce, est equus nūntī?

II. 1. The messenger tells a long story to the Romans.  
 2. We are faithful servants. 3. The slave conceals (his) money in the garden. 4. He is a Roman messenger.  
 5. The poet's little son is fond of stories. 6. (There) are large roses in the garden. 7. Galba is a friend of the Helvetians. 8. The farmer's son has a large horse.  
 9. The servant is calling (his) master's horses. 10. He calls together (his) dear friends. 11. The diligence of the girls is great.

## CHAPTER VIII.

Second or *o*-Declension: Nouns in *-er* and *-ir*.*Imperfect Indicative of the Verb Sum.*

## 42.

## PARADIGMS.

puer, <i>m.</i> , boy.	ager, <sup>1</sup> <i>m.</i> , field.	vir, <i>m.</i> , man.
SINGULAR.		
<i>N.</i> puer	ager	vir
<i>G.</i> puerī	agri	virī
<i>D.</i> puerō	agrō	virō
<i>Ac.</i> puerum	agrum	virum
<i>V.</i> puer	ager	vir
<i>Ab.</i> puerō	agrō	virō
PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i> pueri	agri	virī
<i>G.</i> puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
<i>D.</i> pueris	agriis	virīs
<i>Ac.</i> puerōs	agrōs	virōs
<i>V.</i> pueri	agri	virī
<i>Ab.</i> pueris	agriis	virīs

1. How do the terminations of nouns in *-er* and *-ir* differ from those of nouns in *-us* ?
2. What is the stem of *puer* ? of *ager* ? See 31. 3.
3. Decline together *puer parvus*, *lātus ager*, *vir fidus*.
4. GENDER. — Nouns in *-er* and *-ir* of the second declension are masculine.

---

<sup>1</sup> Most nouns in *-er* are declined like *ager*. The only one in this book declined like *puer* is *liberī* (plural).

**43. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum*.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>eram, I was.</i>	<i>erāmus, we were.</i>
2. <i>erās, you were.</i>	<i>erātis, you were.</i>
3. <i>erat, he was.</i>	<i>erant, they were.</i>

**44. VOCABULARY.**

<i>ager, agri, m., field.</i>	<i>puer, pueri, m., boy.</i>
<i>discipulus, -i, m., pupil.</i>	<i>vir, viri, m., man.</i>
<i>liberi, -orum, m., children.</i>	<i>peritus, -a, -um, skillful.</i>
<i>magister, -tri, m., teacher.</i>	<i>nōn, adv., not.</i>
<i>Mārcus, -i, m., Marcus.</i>	<i>semper, adv., always.</i>

**45. EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Filius Titī erat nōn laetus. 2. Eram amīcus fili<sup>1</sup> magistrī. 3. Erās semper fīdus amīcus. 4. Poēta Rōmānus diligentiam agricolae perītī laudat. 5. Vir equum amīci in agrō habet. 6. Erāmus discipuli fīdī. 7. Amīcus Galbae erat agricola perītus. 8. Rōmānī concilium convocant et nūntium Helvētiōrum culpant. 9. Helvētīī fēminās et liberōs in silvā cēlant. 10. Magister bonōs puerōs semper laudat. 11. Rōmānī iniuriās Helvētiōrum culpant. 12. Mārcus semper erat poētārum amīcus.

II. 1. Many were the wars of the Romans. 2. You were good children. 3. Galba was a welcome messenger. 4. The man gives a horse to his son. 5. The Roman farmers were not skillful. 6. The bad boys were in the farmer's garden. 7. The letters of friends are always welcome. 8. You were a faithful pupil, but (your) friend Marcus was not faithful. 9. We were always good boys. 10. Good masters do not always have faithful servants. 11. Galba's horse is the gift of a friend.

---

<sup>1</sup> See footnote to 40.

## CHAPTER IX.

## Adjectives in -er.

*Future Indicative of the Verb Sum ; Dative of Possessor.*

46.

## PARADIGMS.

**Miser, wretched.**

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>SINGULAR.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N.	miser		misera	miserum
G.	miserī		miserae	miserī
D.	miserō		miserae	miserō
Ac.	miserum		miseram	miserum
V.	miser		misera	miserum
Ab.	miserō		miserā	miserō
		<i>PLURAL.</i>		
N.	miserī		miserae	misera
G.	miserōrum		miserārum	miserōrum
D.	miserīs		miserīs	miserīs
Ac.	miserōs		miserās	misera
V.	miserī		miserae	misera
Ab.	miserīs		miserīs	miserīs

**Pulcher, beautiful.**

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>SINGULAR.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N.	pulcher		pulchra	pulchrum
G.	pulchrī		pulchrae	pulchrī
D.	pulchrō		pulchrae	pulchrō
Ac.	pulchrum		pulchram	pulchrum
V.	pulcher		pulchra	pulchrum
Ab.	pulchrō		pulchrā	pulchrō

	<b>Masculine.</b>	<b>PLURAL.</b>	
		<b>Feminine.</b>	<b>Neuter.</b>
N.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchrīs	pulchris	pulchrīs
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
V.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Ab.	pulchris	pulchris	pulchris

1. Observe that the masculine has the same peculiarities as substantives in *-er*. What are they?

2. Most adjectives in *-er* of the second declension are declined like *pulcher*. The only exceptions in this book are *miser* and *liber*. Decline together *miser servus*, *equus niger*.

#### 47. FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum*.

	<b>SINGULAR.</b>	<b>PLURAL.</b>
1.	erō, <i>I shall be.</i>	erimus, <i>we shall be.</i>
2.	eris, <i>you will be.</i>	eritis, <i>you will be.</i>
3.	erit, <i>he will be.</i>	erunt, <i>they will be.</i>

#### 48. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puer librum habet**, *the boy has a book.*
2. **Est puerō liber**, *the boy has (there is to the boy) a book.*
3. **Titus equum habet**, *Titus has a horse.*
4. **Est Titō equus**, *Titus has (there is to Titus) a horse.*

1. Notice the two ways of expressing possession. The form with the dative and the verb *sum* should be used in the exercises, unless the teacher prefer to have the sentence expressed in two ways. The dative thus used is called the *dative of possessor*.

**49. RULE.** — *The dative is used with sum to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

## 50.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>carrus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , cart.	<b>niger</b> , -gra, -grum, black.
<b>frūmentum</b> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , grain.	<b>pulcher</b> , -chra, -chrum, beautiful.
<b>liber</b> , -brī, <i>m.</i> , book.	
<b>dēfessus</b> , -a, -um, tired.	<b>dēlectat</b> , he delights.
<b>liber</b> , -era, -erum, free.	<b>dēlectant</b> , they delight.
<b>miser</b> , -era, -erum, wretched, unhappy.	

## 51.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Es agricola, eris poëta. 2. Nūntius in silvā equum dēfessum cēlat. 3. Filiō agricolae est carrus māgnus. 4. Filius agricolae carrum māgnum habet. 5. Vir frūmentum nōn habet. 6. Virō est frūmentum in carrō. 7. Aqua erit in mēnsā servī. 8. Equī nūntiōrum erunt dēfessī. 9. Helvētīi erant liberī. 10. Vir filiae pulchrum librum dat. 11. Agrī et silvae semper poētā dēlectant. 12. Perītī magistrī dīligentiam discipulōrum laudant. 13. Eritis amīcī puerōrum miserōrum. 14. Mārcus nigrō equō frūmentum dat. 15. Erimus fīdī discipulī.

II. 1. I shall be tired. 2. The boy has a beautiful book. 3. He gives the boy a white dove. 4. He calls together the friends of the messenger. 5. Where are the master's books? 6. The diligence of the boy delights (his) faithful teacher. 7. You will be faithful, and we shall be grateful. 8. There will be a meeting of teachers in my friend's garden. 9. The slaves were unhappy. 10. He always praises the faithful.<sup>1</sup> 11. The children have many beautiful presents.

<sup>1</sup> Plural adjectives are frequently used in Latin, as in English, without a substantive. When the substantive understood denotes persons, the adjective should be in the masculine; but when the word *things* can be understood, the adjective should be neuter.

Compare the English, "The land of the *free*, and the home of the *brave*."



## CHAPTER X.

## Third Declension.

*Mute Stems.*

52.

## PARADIGMS.

	<b>princeps, m.,</b> <i>chief.</i>	<b>rēx, m.,</b> <i>king.</i>	<b>miles, m.,</b> <i>soldier.</i>	<b>caput, n.,</b> <i>head.</i>
	<b>Stem princip-</b>	<b>rēg-</b>	<b>milit-</b>	<b>capit-</b>
<b>SINGULAR.</b>				
<i>N., V.</i>	<b>princeps</b>	<b>rēx</b>	<b>miles</b>	<b>caput</b>
<i>G.</i>	<b>principis</b>	<b>rēgis</b>	<b>militis</b>	<b>capitis</b>
<i>D.</i>	<b>principi</b>	<b>rēgi</b>	<b>militi</b>	<b>capiti</b>
<i>Ac.</i>	<b>principem</b>	<b>rēgem</b>	<b>militem</b>	<b>caput</b>
<i>Ab.</i>	<b>principe</b>	<b>rēge</b>	<b>militē</b>	<b>capite</b>
<b>PLURAL.</b>				
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<b>principēs</b>	<b>rēgēs</b>	<b>militēs</b>	<b>capita</b>
<i>G.</i>	<b>principum</b>	<b>rēgum</b>	<b>militum</b>	<b>capitum</b>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<b>principibus</b>	<b>rēgibus</b>	<b>militibus</b>	<b>capitibus</b>

1. In the third declension, the stem ends in a consonant or *i*.

2. Stems ending in a consonant, are classed according to their final letter, as mute stems and liquid stems.<sup>1</sup>

3. To find the stem, drop the ending-*um* of the genitive plural.

4. Make a table of the case-endings from **princeps**.

5. Notice that the last vowel of the stem is sometimes changed in the nominative.

---

<sup>1</sup> For sibilant stems, see 61.

What happens when *c* or *g* precedes the ending *s*?  
When *t* precedes the ending *s*?

## 53.

## VOCABULARY.

**caput**, -itis, *n.*, head.

**iūdex**, -icis, *m.*, judge.

**mīles**, -itis, *m.*, soldier.

**pīlum**, -ī, *n.*, javelin.

**prīnceps**, -ipis, *m.*, chief.

**rēx**, **rēgis**, *m.*, king.

**cottīdiē**, *adv.*, daily.

**saepe**, *adv.*, often.

**vāstat**, he lays waste.

**vāstant**, they lay waste.

## 54.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mīles multās belli fābulās puerīs cottīdiē nārrat.  
2. Bella longa bonōs virōs nōn dēlectant. 3. Mīlītēs agrōs  
agricolārum vāstant. 4. Rēx multōs<sup>1</sup> et fidōs servōs habet.  
5. Iūdicī sunt multī et bonī librī. 6. Rēgēs et prīncipēs  
saepe multōs et pulchrōs equōs habent. 7. Filius mīlītis  
erat peritus agricola. 8. Iūdex puerīs librōs bonōs dat.  
9. Multī puerī fābulās mīlitum amant. 10. Caput equī  
nigrī est parvum. 11. Mīlītēs Rōmānī longa pīla habent.

II. 1. The horse has a large head. 2. The king's  
soldiers lay waste the broad fields. 3. The judge's  
son has many friends. 4. The chiefs of the Helvetians  
give grain to their friends. 5. The teacher praises (his)  
faithful pupils. 6. The wretched slave will be free.  
7. Good books do not always delight children. 8. The  
soldier gives grain and water to (his) tired horses.  
9. The soldier has a large black horse. 10. The farmer  
has grain in (his) cart. 11. Good chiefs have faithful  
soldiers.

---

<sup>1</sup> In Latin two adjectives limiting the same substantive are generally connected by the conjunction *et*.

## CHAPTER XI.

Third Declension : Mute Stems. — *Continued.**First Conjugation, Present Indicative Active.*

## 55.

## PARADIGMS.

	<b>voluptās, f.,</b> <i>pleasure.</i>	<b>pēs, m.,</b> <i>foot.</i>	<b>cūstōs, m. and</b> <i>f., keeper.</i>
<b>Stem</b>	<b>voluptāt-</b>	<b>ped-</b>	<b>cūstōd-</b>

## SINGULAR.

<b>N., V.</b>	<b>voluptās</b>	<b>pēs</b>	<b>cūstōs</b>
<b>G.</b>	<b>voluptātis</b>	<b>pedis</b>	<b>cūstōdis</b>
<b>D.</b>	<b>voluptāti</b>	<b>pedi</b>	<b>cūstōdī</b>
<b>Ac.</b>	<b>voluptātem</b>	<b>pedem</b>	<b>cūstōdem</b>
<b>Ab.</b>	<b>voluptāte</b>	<b>pede</b>	<b>cūstōde</b>

## PLURAL.

<b>N., Ac., V.</b>	<b>voluptātēs</b>	<b>pedēs</b>	<b>cūstōdēs</b>
<b>G.</b>	<b>voluptātum</b>	<b>pedum</b>	<b>cūstōdum</b>
<b>D., Ab.</b>	<b>voluptātibus</b>	<b>pedibus</b>	<b>cūstōdibus</b>

What happens when *d* or *t* precedes the nominative ending *s*?

## 56.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Principal Parts<sup>1</sup> of Amō.*

<b>PRES. IND.</b>	<b>PRES. INF.</b>	<b>PERF. IND.</b>	<b>SUPINE.<sup>2</sup></b>
<b>amō, I love ;</b>	<b>amāre, to love ;</b>	<b>amāvī, I loved ;</b>	<b>amātum, to love.</b>

<sup>1</sup> These are called principal parts because, when these are known, all forms of the verb may be readily found.

<sup>2</sup> The supine is the same in form as the neuter of the perfect participle.

1. To find the present stem of a verb, drop the final *re* of the present infinitive active.

2. Verbs are said to be of the first conjugation, when the present stem ends in *ā*; i.e. when the present infinitive active ends in *āre*.

3. Give the principal parts of *laudō, nārrō, vocō, cēlō, culpō, dēlectō, vāstō*.

4. *Dō, dāre, dedī, dātum*, which resembles a verb of the first conjugation, has a short stem-vowel, *ā*.

## 57.

## PARADIGM.

*Present Indicative Active of Amō.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

1. *amō, I love.*<sup>1</sup>

*amāmus, we love.*

2. *amās, you love.*

*amātis, you love.*

3. *amat, he loves.*

*amant, they love.*

Make a table of the terminations and commit them to memory.

## 58.

## EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Laudō, laudāmus.* 2. *Nārrās, nārrātis.* 3. *Puer vocat, equum vocat.* 4. *Cēlās, cēlāmus.* 5. *Agricola servum culpāt.* 6. *Militēs culpās.* 7. *Puellās culpāmus.* 8. *Aquam equis damus.* 9. *Puerōs vocās.* 10. *Fidōs servōs laudātis.*

II. 1. I tell, we tell. 2. You are praising, he does praise. 3. We are calling, he is calling. 4. I conceal, you are concealing. 5. He is calling, the master is

---

<sup>1</sup> Also *I do love.* and *I am loving.*

calling. 6. He calls together the chiefs. 7. He is calling together (his) friends. 8. It pleases the poet. 9. We give gifts. 10. He does give gifts.

## 59.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>comes, -itis, m. and f.,</b> companion.	<b>voluptās, -ātis, f.,</b> pleasure.
<b>cūstōs, -ōdis, m. and f.,</b> guard, keeper.	<b>liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,</b> set free.
<b>eques, -itis, m.,</b> horseman; in plural, cavalry.	<b>parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,</b> prepare.
<b>lapis, -idis, m.,</b> stone.	<b>parātus, -a, -um</b> ( <i>perf. part. of parō, used as adj.</i> ), prepared, ready.
<b>obses, -idis, m. and f.,</b> hostage.	<b>currit,</b> he runs.
<b>pēs, pedis, m.,</b> foot.	<b>currunt,</b> they run.
	<b>in</b> ( <i>prep. with acc.</i> ), into, to, against.

## 60.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Equitī pulchrum equum dō. 2. Amāmus fidōs amīcōs. 3. Rēx militēs dēfessōs culpāt. 4. Libērī principum Helvētiōrum erant obsidēs. 5. Librōs comitum cēlās. 6. Comes nautae erat miser. 7. Iūdicis filium cottīdiē laudāmus. 8. Multae sunt voluptātēs agricolae filiōrum. 9. Caput equī est nigrum, sed pedēs sunt albī. 10. Fidī cūstōdēs nōn sunt rēgī. 11. In agrīs erant lapidēs multī. 12. Agrōs rēgis vāstātis. 13. Equitēs equīs frūmentum parant. 14. Equus iūdicis in hortum currit. 15. Helvētiī parātī erant obsidēs dare.

II. 1. Many men love pleasure. 2. The weary soldier conceals (his) wrong. 3. The hostages of the Romans run into the woods. 4. The companions of kings are not always good. 5. The soldier's javelin was long. 6. The cavalry set free the hostages. 7. I often censure bad pupils, and you always love the good. 8. The feet of

the horsemen will be free. 9. The horsemen have grain in carts. 10. We tell stories to the little children every day.



## CHAPTER XII.

## Third Declension: Liquid Stems.

*First Conjugation, Imperfect Indicative Active.*

61.

## PARADIGMS.

	<b>cōnsul, m.,</b> <i>consul.</i>	<b>victor, m.,</b> <i>victor.</i>	<b>virgō, f.,</b> <i>virgin.</i>	<b>vulnus, n.,</b> <i>wound.</i>
Stem	<b>cōnsul-</b>	<b>victor-</b>	<b>virgin-</b>	<b>vulner-<sup>1</sup></b>
SINGULAR.				
<i>N., V.</i>	cōnsul	victor	virgō	vulnus
<i>G.</i>	cōnsul <b>is</b>	victō <b>ris</b>	virgin <b>is</b>	vulner <b>is</b>
<i>D.</i>	cōnsul <b>ī</b>	victō <b>rī</b>	virgin <b>ī</b>	vulner <b>ī</b>
<i>Ac.</i>	cōnsule <b>m</b>	victō <b>rem</b>	virgin <b>em</b>	vuln <b>us</b>
<i>Ab.</i>	cōnsule	victō <b>re</b>	virgin <b>e</b>	vulner <b>e</b>
PLURAL.				
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	cōnsul <b>ēs</b>	victō <b>rēs</b>	virgin <b>ēs</b>	vulner <b>a</b>
<i>G.</i>	cōnsul <b>um</b>	victō <b>rum</b>	virgin <b>um</b>	vulner <b>um</b>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	cōnsul <b>ibus</b>	victō <b>ribus</b>	virgin <b>ibus</b>	vulner <b>ibus</b>

62. In English, questions which can be answered by *yes* or *no* require no interrogative word. For the Latin method of expressing such questions, see the following sentences:—

<sup>1</sup> This was originally an *s* stem, but *s* was changed to *r*.

1. **Puerumne, Iūlia, culpās ?** *Do you blame the boy, Julia ?*
2. **Nōnne servus est miser ?** *Is not the slave unhappy ? or, The slave is unhappy, is he not ?*
3. **Num magister vocat ?** *Is the master calling ? or, The master is not calling, is he ?*

The interrogative *ne* is an enclitic, always appended to the emphatic word. See 4. and 7.

*Nōnne* expects the answer *yes*; *num* expects the answer *no*; *ne* does not indicate what answer is expected.

## 63.

## PARADIGM.

*Imperfect Indicative Active of Amō.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>amābam</b> , <i>I was loving.</i> <sup>1</sup> | <b>amābāmus</b> , <i>we were loving.</i>  |
| 2. <b>amābās</b> , <i>you were loving.</i>           | <b>amābātis</b> , <i>you were loving.</i> |
| 3. <b>amābat</b> , <i>he was loving.</i>             | <b>amābant</b> , <i>they were loving.</i> |

Inflect the imperfect indicative active of **laudō**, **nārrō**, **vocō**, **dō**, **cōlō**, **culpō**, **parō**, **vāstō**.

## 64.

## EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. **Culpābās**, **culpābātis**. 2. **Laudābam**, **laudābāmus**.  
 3. **Cēlābat**, **cēlābant**. 4. **Parābam**, **parābat**, **parābant**.  
 5. **Puellās laudābat**, **cottidiē laudat**. 6. **Nārrābās**, **puellae nārrābant**. 7. **Vocābam**, **vocābāmus**. 8. **Dabat**, **dabās**, **dabant**. 9. **Columbam liberābat**. 10. **Prīncipem culpāmus**.

II. 1. I was blaming, we were blaming. 2. He was praising, they were praising. 3. You were calling, he was calling. 4. I was calling, we were calling. 5. He was giving, we were giving. 6. He was telling, the boy is telling. 7. I am preparing, I was preparing. 8. They are laying waste, he is laying waste. 9. He was freeing the slaves. 10. We were concealing the money.

<sup>1</sup> Also *I loved, I did love, I used to love.*

## 65.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>clāmor</b> , -ōris, <i>m.</i> , shout, noise.	<b>vulnus</b> , -eris, <i>n.</i> , wound.
<b>cōnsul</b> , -ulis, <i>m.</i> , consul.	<b>ōrnō</b> , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, deck, adorn.
<b>corōna</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , crown, garland.	<b>mittit</b> , he sends.
<b>nōmen</b> , -inis, <i>n.</i> , name.	<b>mittunt</b> , they send.
<b>oppidum</b> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , town.	<b>ē</b> , <sup>1</sup> <b>ex</b> ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ), from, out of.
<b>soror</b> , -ōris, <i>f.</i> , sister.	<b>ne</b> ,
<b>victor</b> , -ōris, <i>m.</i> , conqueror, victor.	<b>nōne</b> ,
<b>virgō</b> , -inis, <i>f.</i> , maiden, virgin.	<b>num</b> , } <i>signs of questions.</i>

## 66.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Militēs cōnsulis ex oppidō currunt. 2. Nōne magister clāmōrem puerōrum culpāt? 3. Victōrēs Rōmānōrum corōna ōrnābat. 4. Nōmen virginis erat Iulia. 5. Cūstōdēsne obsidum culpābās? 6. Bonum rēgem et iūdicem laudābāmus. 7. Cēlābātis, puerī, librōs sorōris. 8. Obsidī aquam dabam. 9. Servī prīncipis agrōs parābant. 10. Num mīles vulnera cēlābat? 11. Cōnsul ex agrīs in oppidum militēs multōs mittit. 12. Liberōs in Britanniam obsidēs mittunt. 13. Nōne parātus eris victōrem ōrnāre? 14. Cōnsulī voluptātēs nōn multae sunt.

II. 1. A crown was adorning the head of the victor. 2. Do you praise the diligence of the pupils every day? 3. The soldiers are sending (their) children out of the town. 4. (My) sister's horse is black. 5. Galba runs into the field and calls the horse. 6. Was not the maiden's companion a Roman knight (*eques*)? 7. We were setting free the feet of the slaves. 8. There were many stones in the garden. 9. The Roman consul is laying waste the towns and fields. 10. The shouts of the pupils did not delight the master.

<sup>1</sup> ē is used before consonants, ex before vowels and consonants.



## CHAPTER XIII.

## Third Declension. — Continued.

*First Conjugation, Future Indicative Active; Ablative of Instrument.*

67.

## PARADIGM.

*Future Indicative Active of Amō.*

## SINGULAR.

1. amābō, *I shall love.*
2. amābis, *you will love.*
3. amābit, *he will love.*

## PLURAL.

- amābimus, *we shall love.*
- amābitis, *you will love.*
- amābunt, *they will love.*

68.

## EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Laudābit, laudābunt. 2. Ūrnābō, ōrnābimus.  
 3. Nārrāmus, nārrābāmus, nārrābimus. 4. Vāstat, vāstābat, vāstābit. 5. Cēlābās, cēlābis, cēlābunt. 6. Vocābit, ōrnābat, ōrnat. 7. Dabō, dabimus, dabunt. 8. Vocābitis, vocābātis, vocātis. 9. Dēlectat, dēlectābit, dēlectābat. 10. Ōrnāmus, ōrnābāmus, ōrnābant.

II. 1. I shall praise, we shall praise. 2. He is calling, he was telling, I shall tell. 3. We shall conceal, he will conceal. 4. I shall set free, we shall set free, they will set free. 5. He will give, you will give, they will give. 6. We will call, it will delight, they will deck. 7. He is blaming, they were blaming, I shall blame. 8. He will prepare, they will prepare, you will prepare. 9. He will tell, I was telling, they will tell. 10. We were praising, he will call, you will tell.

## 69.

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Puella rosīs caput ōrnat, the girl adorns her head with roses.*
2. *Poēta fābulīs līberōs dēlectat, the poet delights his children with stories.*
3. *Lapide equitem vulnerat, he wounds the horseman with a stone.*

Observe that *rosīs*, *fābulīs*, and *lapide* are in the ablative case, and that they show the instrument or means employed in doing the act. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of instrument or means*.

**70. RULE.** — *Instrument or means is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

## 71.

## VOCABULARY.

*arbor*, -oris, *f.*, tree.  
*carmen*, -inis, *n.*, song, poem.  
*Caesar*, -aris, *m.*, Caesar.  
*Gallia*, -ae, *f.*, Gaul.  
*Homērus*, -i, *m.*, Homer.  
*homō*, -inis, *m.*, man.  
*pater*, *patris*, *m.*, father.  
*Graecus*, -a, -um, Greek.

*Graeci*, -ōrum, *m.*, the Greeks.  
*vulnerō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wound.  
*portō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry.  
*ad* (*prep. with acc.*), to, for, near.  
*ā*,<sup>1</sup> *ab*, (*prep. with abl.*), from, by.

## 72.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Homērum, principem Graecōrum poētārum, magistrī et discipulī laudābant.* 2. *Multi liberī principum Galliae obsidēs erant Caesaris.* 3. *Arborēs multae et lātae rēgis hortum ōrnant.* 4. *Nōne miles pilō equitem vulnerābit?* 5. *Bonī puerī columbam pulchram*

---

<sup>1</sup> *ā* before consonants, *ab* before vowels.

lapide nōn vulnerābunt. 6. Virginēs patrem amant et laudant. 7. Carmina poētae multōs hominēs dēlectant. 8. Bonōs librōs amābis, nōn cēlābis. 9. Cūstōdibus pīla dabimus, obsidibus aquam. 10. Eques in capite vulnus habet. 11. Nūntius ab Helvētiīs ad Caesarem dōna portat. 12. Puer librum ad sorōrem mittit. 13. Amīcīs voluptātēs multās pecūniā parābat.

II. 1. Men love (their) children, and often praise (them). 2. The victors will bring grain from the fields. 3. The shouts of the soldiers will not wound the horsemen of Caesar. 4. The maiden has a crown of roses. 5. Bad men are not good companions, are they? 6. The horse's feet are in the water. 7. The names of the pupils are in the master's book. 8. You will give a book to (your) father, but a rose to (your) sister. 9. Will you set free the sister of the consul? 10. The boy is ready to carry a letter to (his) father.



## CHAPTER XIV.

### Third Declension : Stems in i.

*First Conjugation, Perfect Indicative Active ; Perfect Indicative of Sum ; Ablative of Manner.*

#### 73.

#### PARADIGMS.

<b>īgnis, m.,</b>	<b>hostis, m. and f.,</b>	<b>caedēs, f.,</b>
<i>fire.</i>	<i>enemy.</i>	<i>slaughter.</i>
Stem <b>īgni-</b>	<b>hosti-</b>	<b>caedi-</b>

## SINGULAR.

N., V.	ignis	hostis	caedēs
G.	ignis	hostis	caedis
D.	ignī	hostī	caedi
Ac.	ignem	hostem	caedem
Ab.	ignī, -e	hoste	caede

## PLURAL.

N., V.	ignēs	hostēs	caedēs
G.	ignium	hostium	caedium
D., Ab.	ignibus	hostibus	caedibus
Ac.	ignēs, -is	hostēs, -is	caedēs, -is

1. Most nouns in *-is* are declined like *hostis*, some like *ignis*; but a few have only *im* in the accusative singular, and only *i* in the ablative singular.

2. Whenever any of these nouns are introduced in this book that are not declined like *hostis*, their peculiarities will be given.

3. Nouns in *-ēs*, not increasing in the genitive (that is, not having more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative) are declined like *caedēs*.

## 74.

## PARADIGMS.

*Perfect Indicative Active of Amō.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

1.	amāvī,	{ <i>I loved.</i> <i>I have loved.</i>	amāvimus,	{ <i>we loved.</i> <i>we have loved.</i>
2.	amāvistī,	{ <i>you loved.</i> <i>you have loved.</i>	amāvistis,	{ <i>you loved.</i> <i>you have loved.</i>
3.	amāvit,	{ <i>he loved.</i> <i>he has loved.</i>	amāvērunt or amāvēre,	{ <i>they loved.</i> <i>they have loved.</i>

*Perfect Indicative of Sum.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
1. fui,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ was.} \\ I \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$	fulmus,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} we \text{ were.} \\ we \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$
2. fuisti,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} you \text{ were.} \\ you \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$	fuistis,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} you \text{ were.} \\ you \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$
3. fuit,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} he \text{ was.} \\ he \text{ has been.} \end{array} \right.$	fuērunt or fuēre,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} they \text{ were.} \\ they \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$

1. Notice that the perfect stem of *amō* is the present stem + *v*. It may be found in any verb by dropping the final *i* of the first person of the perfect indicative active.

2. Observe that the endings of the perfect are the same for both *sum* and *amō*. Make a table of them, and commit to memory.

**75.****EXERCISES ON FORMS.**

I. 1. *Portābit, portāvit, portāvērunt.* 2. *Parāvī, parāvimus, parāvērunt.* 3. *Vocāvistī, vocāvistis, vocābitis.* 4. *Laudāvī, laudāvit, laudāvērunt.* 5. *Laudās, laudābās, laudābis.* 6. *Liberāvit, dedit, cēlāvit.* 7. *Destī, dedistis, culpāvī.* 8. *Vulnerābis, vulnerābās, vulnerāvit.* 9. *Vulnerāvī, vulnerāvērunt, vulnerāvistis.* 10. *Vāstāvit, parāvit, convocāvit.*

II. 1. I was carrying, you were calling, he will tell. 2. He has carried, you called, he concealed. 3. I have given, you gave, it delighted. 4. I shall lay waste, I shall call, we shall tell. 5. He was carrying, he will carry, he has carried. 6. He was concealing, he has concealed, they concealed. 7. He praised, he has blamed, they have called. 8. You were preparing, you will carry, you will call. 9. They adorn, will adorn, have adorned. 10. He will wound, was wounding, is wounding.

## 76. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Agricola frūmentum cum dīligentiā in oppidum portābat**, the farmer was carrying grain into the town with diligence.
2. **Agricola māgnā cum dīligentiā in oppidum frūmentum portābat**, the farmer with great diligence was carrying grain into the town.
3. **Agricola māgnā dīligentiā in oppidum frūmentum portābat**, the farmer with great diligence was carrying grain into the town.

Observe that in the sentences *cum dīligentiā*, *māgnā cum dīligentiā*, and *māgnā dīligentiā*, show the manner of the act. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of manner*.

**77. RULE.** — *Manner is expressed by the ablative with cum, or a limiting adjective, or with both.*

Manner may also, as in English, be expressed by an adverb.

## 78. VOCABULARY.

<b>caedēs</b> , -is, <i>f.</i> , slaughter, murder.	<b>occupō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, seize, take.
<b>fīnis</b> , -is, <i>m.</i> , end ; <i>pl.</i> , territory.	<b>facit</b> , he makes.
<b>gladius</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , sword.	<b>faciunt</b> , they make.
<b>hostis</b> , -is, <i>m. and f.</i> , enemy.	<b>libenter</b> , <i>adv.</i> , gladly.
<b>ignis</b> , -is, <i>m.</i> , fire.	<b>dē</b> ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ), about, of, from.
<b>māter</b> , -tris, <i>f.</i> , mother.	<b>cum</b> ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ), with.
<b>labōrō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, toil, labor.	

## 79. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Miles gladiō hostem vulnerāyit. 2. Helvētīi nūntiōs dē iniūriis ad Caesarem mittunt. 3. Victor finem bellī libenter facit.<sup>1</sup> 4. Caesar igne et gladiō finēs hosti-

<sup>1</sup> Makes gladly, *i.e.* is glad to make.

um vāstāvit. 5. Agricolaē māgnā cum diligentiā laborā-  
vērunt. 6. Nōne diligentiā discipulōrum libenter  
laudāvisti?<sup>1</sup> 7. Militēs Caesaris māgnam hostium caedem  
faciunt. 8. Graeci carmina Homēri laudābant. 9. Multa  
Galliae oppida occupābimus. 10. Cōsul dē Galliā fābu-  
lam nārrat. 11. Serva ad mātrem multa dōna portat ā  
dominā. 12. Clāmōribus māgnis oppidum militēs occu-  
pāvērunt.

II. 1. The boys run to the woods with a great shout.  
2. Were the men of Britain large? 3. The maiden  
called her sister by name. 4. I have decked the head  
of my mother with a garland of roses. 5. The poems of  
Homer delighted the Greeks. 6. Mothers like to adorn<sup>2</sup>  
their children. 7. The trees in my father's garden are  
large. 8. You will wound your companion with your  
sword. 9. The wounds of the soldier were many.  
10. The boy labors diligently<sup>3</sup> in the field every day.



## CHAPTER XV.

### Third Declension : Stems in i. — Continued.

*First Conjugation, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indica-  
tive Active; Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative  
of Sum; Ablative of Accompaniment.*

#### 80.

#### PARADIGMS.

	mare, n.,	animal, n.,
	sea.	animal.
Stem	marī-	animālī-

<sup>1</sup> See 3 and note 1.    <sup>2</sup> Compare 3 and 6, above.    <sup>3</sup> I.e. with diligence.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>maria</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>animālia</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>maris</i>	<i>marium</i>	<i>animālis</i>	<i>animālīum</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>mari</i>	<i>maribus</i>	<i>animāli</i>	<i>animālībus</i>

Observe that the above nouns have *i* stems, and that the nominative is the same as the stem, except that the characteristic *i* has either been changed to *e*, as in *mare*, or dropped, as in *animal*.

## 81.

## PARADIGMS.

*Indicative Active of Amō.*

	SINGULAR.	PLUPERFECT.	PLURAL.
1.	<i>amāveram, I had loved.</i>	<i>amāverāmus, we had loved.</i>	
2.	<i>amāverās, you had loved.</i>	<i>amāverātis, you had loved.</i>	
3.	<i>amāverat, he had loved.</i>	<i>amāverant, they had loved.</i>	

## FUTURE PERFECT.

1.	<i>amāverō, I shall have loved.</i>	<i>amāverimus, we shall have loved.</i>
2.	<i>amāveris, you will have loved.</i>	<i>amāveritis, you will have loved.</i>
3.	<i>amāverit, he will have loved.</i>	<i>amāverint, they will have loved.</i>

*Indicative of Sum.*

	SINGULAR.	PLUPERFECT.	PLURAL.
1.	<i>fueram, I had been.</i>	<i>fuerāmus, we had been.</i>	
2.	<i>fuerās, you had been.</i>	<i>fuerātis, you had been.</i>	
3.	<i>fuerat, he had been.</i>	<i>fuerant, they had been.</i>	

## FUTURE PERFECT.

1.	<i>fuerō, I shall have been.</i>	<i>fuerimus, we shall have been.</i>
2.	<i>fueris, you will have been.</i>	<i>fueritis, you will have been.</i>
3.	<i>fuerit, he will have been.</i>	<i>fuerint, they will have been.</i>



## 82.

## EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 2. Cēlāvī, culpāvī, vocāvī, labōrāvī. 3. Vocāverat, vāstāverat, parāverat. 4. Portāverō, vāstāverō, occupāverō. 5. Cēlāverāsne? parāverāsne? ōrnāverāsne? 6. Cēlāvistīne pecūniam? 7. Līberāverat obsidēs. 8. Frūmentum parāverātis. 9. Sorōrem culpāverat. 10. Puerōs laudāverit. 11. Iūdex militem līberāvit. 12. Gladium hostis occupāverat.

II. 1. They had wounded, he had prepared. 2. He will have loved, they will have blamed. 3. I labor, I was laboring, I will labor. 4. I have labored, I had labored, I shall have labored. 5. He calls, he was calling, he will call. 6. He has called, he had called, he will have called. 7. The soldier had carried a javelin. 8. We had called together the children. 9. The fire had seized the town. 10. The gift will have delighted the boy. 11. I will hurry to call Titus.

## 83.

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Caesar in agrōs Titum cum equitibus mittit, Caesar sends Titus with cavalry into the country-districts.*
2. *Galba cum patre in urbe labōrat, Galba works with his father in the city.*

Observe that *equitibus* denotes the persons by whom Titus is accompanied, and *patre* the person by whom Galba is accompanied. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of accompaniment*.

**84. RULE.** — *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.*

In military phrases *cum* is often omitted; as, *Caesar multis legiōnibus in Galliam properat, Caesar hastens into Gaul with many legions.*

## 85.

## VOCABULARY.

animal, -ālis, *n.*, animal.Bibracte, -is, *n.*, Bibracte.flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river.iter, itineris, *n.*, march, route.legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion.mare, -is, *n.*, sea.vectigal, -gālis, *n.*, tax.

tertius, -a, -um, third.

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hurry.

## 86.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. In mari sunt animalia multa et magna. 2. Derantne Helvetiī Caesarī vectigalia? 3. Caesar cum tertiā legiōne ad oppidum Bibracte properāvit. 4. Hostēs magnīs itineribus ā silvīs ad flūmen properāvērunt. 5. Gladiō et pilō, militēs, cum Graecīs pūgnāvistis. 6. In carminibus Homērus fabulās dē bellō nārrāvit. 7. Liberī cum mātē in pulchrō hortō fuerant. 8. Pulchrae arborēs multōs hominēs dēlectant. 9. Cōsul cum multīs militibus ignī et gladiō finēs hostium vāstāverat. 10. Māga fuerit caedēs hostium.

II. 1. The poet had carried his poems to (his) sister. 2. Cæsar makes a long march and takes the town Bibracte. 3. The soldiers had fought with the enemy, and had wounded many with (their) swords. 4. The boys were glad to labor (were gladly laboring) with (their) fathers in the fields. 5. The march to the river had been long. 6. The taxes of the Greeks will be small. 7. Have sailors always been glad to tell stories about the sea? 8. The legions hasten to the river with the cavalry, and put an end to the slaughter (make an end of the slaughter). 9. The soldiers fought in the river. 10. Cæsar will have laid waste the fields of the enemy with fire.

## CHAPTER XVI.

Third Declension: Mixed Stems.<sup>1</sup>*Ablative of Time.*

## 87.

## PARADIGMS.

	<b>nox, f., night.</b>	<b>urbs, f., city.</b>	<b>mōns, m., mountain.</b>
<b>Stem</b>	<b>noct-</b>	<b>urb-</b>	<b>mont-</b>
<b>SINGULAR.</b>			
<i>N., V.</i>	<b>nox</b>	<b>urbs</b>	<b>mōns</b>
<i>G.</i>	<b>noctis</b>	<b>urbis</b>	<b>montis</b>
<i>D.</i>	<b>nocti</b>	<b>urbi</b>	<b>monti</b>
<i>Ac.</i>	<b>noctem</b>	<b>urbem</b>	<b>montem</b>
<i>Ab.</i>	<b>nocte</b>	<b>urbe</b>	<b>monte</b>
<b>PLURAL.</b>			
<i>N., V.</i>	<b>noctēs</b>	<b>urbēs</b>	<b>montēs</b>
<i>G.</i>	<b>noctium</b>	<b>urbium</b>	<b>montium</b>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<b>noctibus</b>	<b>urbibus</b>	<b>montibus</b>
<i>Ac.</i>	<b>noctēs -is</b>	<b>urbēs -is</b>	<b>montēs -is</b>

Which class of nouns do these resemble in the singular?  
In the plural?

Like these words are declined: 1. Most nouns in *-ns* and *-rs*; 2. Monosyllables in *-s* and *-x* preceded by a consonant.

---

<sup>1</sup> These were originally consonant stems, as given above, but in the plural they are declined like *i* stems.

## 88.

## EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Vocābam, cēlābō, parāvī. 2. Portābis, dederās, occupāveris. 3. Properāsne ad flūmen? 4. Occupātisne, occupābātisne oppidum? 5. Pūgnābantne, laudābuntne? 6. Hominēs liberāvimus, laudābimus. 7. Virgō rosīs sorōrem ōrnābat, ōrnāverat. 8. Ubi mīles pīlum cēlābit, cēlābat? 9. Quid puer ad mātrem portāverit, portāvit? 10. Cum Gallīs pūgnāverit, pūgnāverat.

II. 1. We were calling, we shall hurry. 2. Why were you calling? 3. Did not the master blame the slaves? 4. He fought with a sword, will fight. 5. We shall fight with the Greeks, he will fight. 6. He loved (his) brothers, had loved. 7. He will have praised the poem, you were praising. 8. Fine trees adorn, were adorning, the garden. 9. The Greeks had paid, were paying, tribute. 10. We will call, have called, a council.

## 89.

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Hieme in urbe Mārcus labōrat**, *in the winter Marcus works in the city.*
2. **Legiō nocte oppidum occupāvit**, *the legion seized the town in the night.*
3. **Ūnā hōrā in urbe erō**, *within an hour I shall be in the city.*

Observe that *hieme* shows the time *when* Marcus works in the city, *nocte* the time *when* the town was seized, and *ūnā hōrā* the time *within which* I shall reach the city.

**90. RULE.** — *Time when, or within which, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Time within which may also be expressed by **in** with the ablative.

## 91.

## VOCABULARY.

**aestās, -ātis, f.,** summer.**annus, -i, m.,** year.**dux, ducis, m.,** leader.**hiems, hiemis, f.,** winter.**hōra, -ae, f.,** hour.**mōns, montis, m.,** mountain.**nox, noctis, f.,** night.**pāx, pācis, f.,** peace.**urbs, urbis, f.,** city.**vigilia, -ae, f.,** (part of the night)

watch.

## 92.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dux per silvās ad flūmen properāverat et cum hostibus pūgnāverat. 2. Tertiā vigiliā noctis Bibracte occupābāmus. 3. Māter Galbae erit in urbe hieme, nōn aestāte. 4. Dē tertiā vigiliā legiōnēs ex oppidō properāvērunt. 5. Num animālia ignem amant? 6. Flūmina in mare currunt. 7. Tertiā hōrā Caesar māgnam caedem hostium facit. 8. Tertiō annō bellī cōsulibus vectigālia dederātis. 9. In pācis temporibus agricolae sunt laeti. 10. Erant multae arborēs in montibus. 11. Militēs tertiāe legiōnis gladiis et pilis pūgnābant.

II. 1. The leader of the soldiers makes peace with the Helvetians. 2. The farmers labored cheerfully in the summer. 3. The wearied soldiers had hastened by forced marches into the territory of the enemy, and had taken the town in the third watch of the night. 4. Winter on the mountain had not been agreeable. 5. We had fought at night with the Roman legions. 6. The faithful mother has called her tired children into the garden. 7. The men hastened to the sea in the third watch. 8. Man is an animal. 9. Galba did not seize the beautiful town, but laid waste the fields of the enemy. 10. The soldiers are laying waste the fields with fire.

## CHAPTER XVII.

## Third Declension.

*Rules for Gender.*

Make a complete table of the nominative endings of nouns of the third declension.

**93.** Gender. 1. Nouns in *-ō*, *-or*, *-ōs*, *-er*, and *-ēs*, increasing in the genitive, are masculine, except those in *-dō*, *-gō*, and abstract and collective nouns in *-iō*.

2. Nouns in *-ās*, *-ēs*, not increasing in the genitive, *-is*, *-ūs* (long), *-dō*, *-gō*, *-iō* (abstract and collective), *-s* (following a consonant), *-x*, are feminine.

3. Nouns in *-a*, *-e*, *-ī*, *-y*, *-c*, *-l*, *-n*, *-t*, *-ar*, *-ur*, *-us* (short), are neuter.

There are many exceptions to these rules, and the learner should notice each when he first meets it.

These rules are subordinate to the general rule for gender. See 7.

**94.**

## VOCABULARY.

**explōrātor**, *-ōris*, *m.*, scout.

**litus**, *-oris*, *n.*, shore (of the sea).

**mōs**, *mōris*, *m.*, custom; *pl.*, manners, character.

**ordō**, *-inis*, *m.*, rank, row, order.

**palūs**, *-ūdis*, *f.*, marsh, swamp.

**pedes**, *peditis*, *m.* (*pēs*, foot), foot-soldier.

**dēliberō**, *-āre*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, consider, deliberate.

**per** (*prep. with acc.*), through.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Liberōs et matrēs in palūde cēlāverant. 2. Caesar cum hostium duce dē pāce dēliberābat. 3. Hieme milītēs Caesaris saepe pūgnābant. 4. Milītēs tertiāe legiōnis ad litus properāverant. 5. Nūntiī per hostium finēs in urbem currunt. 6. Dux dē tertiā vigiliā noctis ad montem explōrātōrēs mittit. 7. Magister discipulīs dē mōribus Graecōrum nārrābat. 8. Explōrātor dē tertiā vigiliā per ōdinēs peditum ad flūmen properāvit. 9. Peditēs tertiā hōrā montem occupāverant. 10. Nocte in monte multōs ignēs habent milītēs.

II. 1. The commander will consult with the consul about the war. 2. The boys run through the woods to the shore. 3. He often hurries into the city about nine o'clock.<sup>1</sup> 4. We will send scouts in the night to the territory of the enemy. 5. The third legion had often fought with the Helvetians in the summer. 6. In the third year of the war we laid waste many towns and cities. 7. They had carried grain into the marshes to (their) wives. 8. The taxes of the Helvetians were small. 9. The mother frequently praises the good manners of (her) children. 10. The commander censures a foot-soldier of the third line.

## 96.

## VOCABULARY.

cohors, -tis, *f.*, a cohort.

lūs, lūris, *n.*, right, law.

pars, partis, *f.*, part.

tempus, -oris, *n.*, time.

decem, numeral *adj.*, indecl.,  
ten.

iuuō, -āre, iuui, iūtum, assist.

stō, stāre, steti, stātum, stand.

<sup>1</sup> As the Romans divided the day into twelve hours, beginning at sunrise, about nine o'clock would be equivalent to about the third hour.

## 97.

## EXERCISES.

III. 1. Caesar ā lītore ad urbem iter facit et mīlītēs frūmentō iuvat. 2. Sunt in legiōne decem cohortēs. 3. Puer in itinere comitem iūverat. 4. Servus per palūdem ad mare currit. 5. Arborum ōrdō in lītore stābat. 6. In pācis temporibus bellum parāmus. 7. Dē iūre obsidum in conciliō dēlībērābimus. 8. Pater filiō librum dē Graecōrum mōribus dedit. 9. Cōsul cum parte pedītum Britanniam occupābit. 10. Dux cum decem cohortibus Graecōs iuvābat.

IV. 1. The scout was telling about the customs of the Helvetians. 2. The horses were standing at (in) the end of a marsh. 3. In the third watch the commander sends a scout to the mountain. 4. Boys, do you like to stand on the seashore in summer? 5. Night puts an end to the journey. 6. Caesar had aided the Helvetians with grain. 7. In the third year of the war the Greeks make peace with the Romans. 8. They will consult about the rights of the victors. 9. At the seashore, winter is not a pleasant season (time of year), is it? 10. We shall set free a part of the hostages at nine o'clock.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> See 95. II. 3.



## CHAPTER XVIII.

**Adjectives of Three Terminations.**

*First Conjugation, Present Indicative Passive; Ablative of Agent.*

**98.****PARADIGMS.**

<b>acer, sharp.</b>			<b>celer, swift.</b>		
Stem <b>ācri-</b>			<b>celeri-</b>		
<b>SINGULAR.</b>			<b>SINGULAR.</b>		
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i> ācer	ācris	ācre	celer	celeris	celere
<i>G.</i>	ācris			celeris	
<i>D., Ab.</i>	ācrī			celeri	
<i>Ac.</i> ācrem	ācrem	ācre	celerem	celerem	celere
<b>PLURAL.</b>			<b>PLURAL.</b>		
<i>N., V.</i> ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
<i>G.</i>	ācrium			celerium	
<i>D., Ab.</i>	ācribus			celeribus	
<i>Ac.</i> ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria	celerēs (-īs)	celerēs (-īs)	celeria

1. These are called adjectives of three terminations, because in the nominative singular there is a different form for each gender.<sup>1</sup>

2. What change in the stem is seen in the nominative?

3. Decline together *miles ācer, domina ācris, celer equus.*

**99.** Learn the conjugation of the present indicative passive of *amō* (p. 205). Make a table of terminations,

<sup>1</sup> To this class belong only a few stems in *-ri*. These are all (except *celer*) declined like *ācer*.

and commit them to memory. Like *amō* conjugate the present indicative passive of *vocō*, *laudō*, *dēlectō*, and *vulnerō*.

### 100. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Vocāmur*, culpāmur. 2. *Vulnerātur ā* mīlite.  
3. *Vulnerātur* pīlō. 4. *Liberat* servum. 5. *Iuvantur ā* patre.  
6. *Cīvēs ā* cōnsule convocantur. 7. *Ā* sorōre laudātur.  
8. *Palūs arboribus* cēlātur. 9. *Frūmentum ex* agrō *ab* agricolā portātur. 10. *Saepe ā* pueris *in* hortum vocāris.

II. 1. We are blamed, you are praised. 2. The mother adorns (her) daughter. 3. The girls are adorned by the mother. 4. The town is seized by the general. 5. The soldiers are wounded with stones. 6. The children are carried through the marsh. 7. The men are blamed by the judge. 8. We are assisted by (our) friends. 9. The fields are devastated by the conquerors. 10. The town is laid waste by fire.

### 101. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Rēgina Iūliam amat*, the queen loves Julia.
2. *Iūlia ā rēgina amātur*, Julia is loved by the queen.
3. *Titus ab amīcō amātur*, Titus is loved by his friend.

Observe that the first and second sentences have the same meaning, but that the verb of the first is in the active voice, and the verb of the second in the passive.

Observe that the agent—that is, the person who does the act—is expressed in the first by the nominative case, and in the second by the ablative with *ā*, and in the third by the ablative with *ab*.

**102. RULE.** — *The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

## 103.

## VOCABULARY.

**celeritās, -ātis, f.**, quickness, rapidity, swiftness.

**civis, -is, m.** (*like ignis*), citizen.

**imperātor, -ōris, m.**, commander-in-chief, general.

**frāter, frātris, m.**, brother.

**lĕgātus, -i, m.**, lieutenant, ambassador.

**nāvis, -is, f.** (*like ignis*), ship.

**ācer, ācris, ācre**, sharp, active.

**celer, celeris, celere**, quick, swift.

**accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, accuse.

## 104.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ācer cōsul malōs civēs accūsāt. 2. Lĕgātus māgnā celeritātē in finēs hostium iter facit et oppidum māgnū occupat. 3. Frāter imperātōris ā civibus accūsātur. 4. Mātrēs liberōs rosīs pulchrīs ōrnant. 5. Urbs tertiā vigiliā noctis ā duce cohortium occupātur. 6. Nautae in decem nāvibus celeribus frūmenta ad urbem portant. 7. Militēs, ab imperātore laudāmur. 8. Lĕgātus cum imperātore dē iūre peditum dēliberāverat. 9. Vir ā comite gladiō vulnerātur. 10. Celerī nāvi ab imperātōris frātre in Britanniam portātur epistula.

II. 1. A beautiful book is given to the pupil by the master. 2. A great part of the city is concealed by the mountain. 3. The lieutenants are summoned to a council by the commander-in-chief. 4. In the summer of the third year of the war, the general consulted with the citizens about peace. 5. Many large animals were standing on the shore of the sea. 6. The active foot-soldiers by forced marches hurry to the consul. 7. Swift ships are given to Caesar by (his) friends. 8. In time of war women often assisted the farmers in the fields. 9. The boys were standing in a row at the end of the marsh. 10. Soldiers, we will quickly (with quickness) prepare to fight.

## CHAPTER XIX.

**Adjectives of Two Terminations.<sup>1</sup>**

*First Conjugation, Imperfect Indicative Passive;  
Ablative of Cause.*

**105.****PARADIGM.**

brevis, short.			Stem brevi-			
SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i>	brevis		breve	brevēs		brevia
<i>G.</i>		brevi			brevium	
<i>D., Ab.</i>		brevi			brevibus	
<i>Ac.</i>	brevem		breve	brevēs (-is)		brevia

**106.** Learn the conjugation of the imperfect indicative passive of *amō*. Make a table of terminations, and commit them to memory.

**107.****EXERCISES ON FORMS.**

I. 1. Pater filium iuvābat. 2. Filius ā patre iuvābatur. 3. Princeps obsidēs liberāverat. 4. Ā Rōmānīs urbs vāstābatur. 5. Accūsābāris ā civibus. 6. Gladii ab hostibus (it) pūgnātur. 7. Lēgātī ab imperātōre accūsābantur. 8. Cēlābāmur in silvā ā duce. 9. Māter puerīs fābulās brevēs nārrābat. 10. Fābulae brevēs ā mātrem nārrābantur.

---

<sup>1</sup> This class includes all *i* stems, except those of three terminations, and also the comparatives.

II. 1. I was calling, thou wast called. 2. We were praising, you were praised. 3. You were blamed, he was praised. 4. We were being assisted by (our) friends. 5. We were preparing war. 6. I was assisted by (my) brother. 7. The sailors were hurrying to the sea with shouts. 8. The women and children were concealed in the swamps. 9. A part of the cohorts was concealed by a row of trees. 10. In the night the city was seized.

### 108. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCE.

1. **Servi diligentia a domino laudantur**, *the slaves are praised by their master for (because of) their diligence.*
2. **Militēs defessi itinere erant**, *the soldiers were weary with (on account of) their march.*

Observe that *diligentiā* shows the cause of the praising, and *itinere* the cause of the weariness, and that they are in the ablative case.

**109. RULE.** — *Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.*

### 110. VOCABULARY.

<b>castra, -ōrum, n.,</b> camp.	<b>superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, sur-</b>
<b>multitūdō, -inis, f., (multus),</b>	pass, defeat.
multitude, great number.	<b>brevis, -e,</b> short.
<b>populus, -i, m.,</b> people.	<b>fortis, -e,</b> brave.
<b>virtūs, -ūtis, f., (vir),</b> bravery,	<b>gravis, -e,</b> heavy.
virtue.	<b>omnis, -e,</b> all.
<b>dolet, he is pained; dolent, they are pained.</b>	

### 111. EXERCISES.

- I. 1. **Peditēs omnēs virtūte ab imperātore laudābantur.**
2. **Militēs tertiæ legiōnis vulneribus multis dolent,**

3. Multitūdō peditum fortium magnā cum celeritāte hostēs superābat. 4. Lapidēs gravēs ad urbem nāvibus portābantur. 5. Cīvēs ad castra properābant et cum imperātore dē iūre dēliberābant. 6. Imperātor mōre populī Rōmānī Helvētiōs iter nōn dat. 7. Brevī tempore Caesar Helvētiōs superāverat. 8. Dux iniūriis Graecōrum ā populō Rōmānō accūsābātur. 9. Gravī vulnere ad castra ā servō lēgātus portātur. 10. Nautae ācres erant laetī celeribus nāvibus.

II. 1. The messenger was praised by the citizens for his quickness. 2. The cohorts were aided by a large number of brave cavalrymen. 3. The journey from a part of Gaul to Britain is short. 4. The lieutenant with all the cohorts hastened to the camp in the night. 5. Has a legion ten cohorts? 6. Water was carried by the women to the weary soldiers. 7. The judge is grieved by the wrongs of (his) brother. 8. A part of the third legion had defeated the Helvetians at the river. 9. The soldiers were standing in the camp. 10. The camp of the enemy was seized through the valor of the third cohort.

## CHAPTER XX.

Adjectives of One Termination.<sup>1</sup>

*First Conjugation, Future Indicative Passive; Ablative of Specification.*

## 112.

## PARADIGMS.

vĕlōx, <i>swift</i> .			potēns, <i>powerful</i> .		
Stem vĕlōc-			potent-		
SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N., V.	vĕlōx		potēns		
G.	vĕlōcis		potentis		
D.	vĕlōcī		potentī		
Ac. vĕlōcem		vĕlōx	potentem		potēns
Ab.	vĕlōci (-e)		potenti (-e)		
PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
N., V. vĕlōcēs		vĕlōcia	potentēs		potentia
G.	vĕlōcium		potentium		
D., Ab.	vĕlōcibus		potentibus		
Ac. vĕlōcēs (-is)		vĕlōcia	potentēs (-is)		potentia

1. What nouns do these adjectives resemble in their declension?

2. Why are they called adjectives of one termination?

3. Decline together *eques vĕlōx*, *vĕlōx equus*, *rēx potēns*, *rēgina potēns*.

**113.** Learn the conjugation of the future indicative passive of *amō*. Make a table of terminations, and commit them to memory.

<sup>1</sup> This class includes all consonant stems except the comparatives.

## 114. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Castra occupābantur, occupābuntur.* 2. *Vulnerābātis, vulnerābitis pilō.* 3. *Celeritās explorātōrem iuvat, iuvābit.* 4. *Explorātor celeritāte laudābatur, laudābitur.* 5. *Ab amicis iuvāmur, iuvābimur.* 6. *Celerēs nāvēs parantur, parābuntur, parābantur.* 7. *Cum celeritāte urbs occupābatur, occupābitur.* 8. *Accūsābitur, accusābatur ab acri lēgātō.* 9. *Virtūs fortium virōrum saepe laudatur.* 10. *Celer nūntius nōn culpābatur, culpābitur.* 11. *Superābāmur, superābimur ā Rōmānis.*

II. 1. We shall assist, you will be assisted. 2. The citizen will be assisted by (his) brother. 3. The city was being seized, it will be seized by the general. 4. Soldiers, you will be praised for (your) valor. 5. In the summer we hurry, we shall hurry to the shore. 6. We were fighting, we shall fight with swords. 7. He is fighting, he was fighting with a foot-soldier. 8. You will be called to the city. 9. The citizens were being concealed, they will be concealed in the woods. 10. Where will the scout be concealed?

## 115. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Rōmāni Helvētiōs virtūte superābant, the Romans surpassed the Helvetians in valor.*
2. *Nōmine fuit rēx, he was king in name.*

Observe that *virtūte* is used with *superābant* and defines its application; so also *nōmine* defines the application of *rēx*. The ablative thus used answers the question *in what respect*, and is called the *ablative of specification*.

**116. RULE.** — *The ablative of specification may be used with a verb, noun, or adjective to define its application.*



## 117.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>ars, artis, f., art.</b>	<b>altus, -a, -um, high, deep.</b>
<b>hūmānitās, -ātis, f., culture.</b>	<b>idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, proper.</b>
<b>nātūra, -ae, f., nature, character.</b>	<b>pār, paris, equal.</b>
<b>vīs, vīs, vī, vim, vī, f., force;</b>	<b>potēns, -entis, powerful.</b>
<b>pl. vīrēs, vīrium, strength.</b>	<b>vēlōx, -ōcis, swift.</b>
	<b>que, conj., enclitic, and.</b>

## 118.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Helvētīi ā populō Rōmānō virtūte hūmānitāteque superābantur. 2. Brevī tempore militēs ācrēs oppidum nōmine Bibracte occupant. 3. Imperātor et lēgātus sunt vīribus parēs. 4. Equī ducum vīribus celeritāteque fuērunt parēs. 5. Frāter arte, bonīs mōribus soror laudābitur. 6. Miles ā frātre hūmānitāte, nōn virtūte superābātur. 7. Iūdex ā cīvibus multis et potentibus accūsābitur. 8. Caesar multitudīne vēlōcium nāvium rēgem iuvābit. 9. Artem ducis, militum virtūtem saepe laudāmus. 10. Lītus est altum et aestāte ad castra nātūrā idōneum.

II. 1. The Romans were surpassed by the enemy in the large number of (their) men. 2. The mountain was not suitable by nature for a large town. 3. The brother of the active lieutenant was commander-in-chief in name. 4. The brave brothers are suffering on account of (their) wounds. 5. All the lieutenants will be summoned to a council in the first watch of the night. 6. The swift cavalry will hurry from the camp at the proper time. 7. The third legion will be praised for (its) swiftmess and (its) valor. 8. The Greeks were surpassed by the Romans in the arts of war. 9. The valor and culture of the Greeks will be praised by all men. 10. The Romans were superior to (their) enemies in the quickness of their ships.

## CHAPTER XXI.

## First Conjugation.

*Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive;  
Descriptive Ablative.*

**119.** Learn the conjugation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of **amō**.

1. These tenses are formed by combining forms of the verb **sum** with the perfect passive participle **amātus, -a, -um**. They are, therefore, called *compound tenses*.

2. It will be observed that the neuter of the participle **amātus, -a, -um**, is exactly like the supine given as one of the principal parts of the verb.

3. The participle **amātus, -a, -um**, is declined like **bonus, -a, -um**, and agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number, and case.

Like **amō** conjugate the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of **laudō, vocō, vulnerō, and liberō**.

**120.**

## EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. **Servī liberātī sunt, liberātī erunt.** 2. **Cūstōs vulnerātus erat, vulnerātus est.** 3. **Cīvēs convocātī erunt, convocātī erant.** 4. **Castra rēgis vāstāta erant.** 5. **Vir-tūte ā populō laudātus es.** 6. **Nocte in silvā cēlātī sumus.** 7. **Dēlectāmur, dēlectābiminī urbe.** 8. **Celeritāte et vīribus nōn superābātur.** 9. **Rēgis patria ignī vāstāta est.** 10. **Ā potentibus cīvibus rēx accūsātus erat.** 11. **Vēlōx equus nūntiō parātus est.**

II. 1. He is called, he was blamed, he will be praised. 2. He was called, he had been blamed, he will have been praised. 3. Titus was consul in name. 4. The commander-in-chief has been overcome. 5. The active horseman had been wounded. 6. We shall surpass the Greeks in culture. 7. The girls had been delighted with the poem. 8. Gaul had been seized by the enemy. 9. The javelins have been carried to the town. 10. Did you carry the javelins to the town? 11. We had been defeated in Britain. 12. He was not surpassed in strength. 13. The town has been taken by the lieutenant. 14. They were set free by the general. 15. The field had been laid waste with fire. 16. They have consulted with the chief.

### 121. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Iūlia est puella māgnā dīligentiā, Julia is a girl of great diligence.*
2. *Caesar erat māgnā virtūte, Caesar was a (man) of great valor.*
3. *Puerōs bonis mōribus amō, I love boys of good character.*

Observe that *māgnā dīligentiā* modifies *puella*, that *māgnā virtūte* modifies *Caesar*, and that *bonis mōribus* modifies *puerūs*. Observe, also, that these ablatives express a quality of the substantives which they modify. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of quality*, or the *descriptive ablative*.

The ablative alone cannot be used to express quality, but must have an adjective in agreement with it, or a limiting genitive.

**122. RULE.** — *The ablative with an adjective may be used to express quality.*

## 123.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>adulēscēns, -entis, m.,</b> youth.	<b>incrēdibilis,</b> incredible.
<b>Arlovistus, -ī, m.,</b> Ariovistus.	<b>ingēns, -entis,</b> huge, vast.
<b>Germānus, -a, -um,</b> German.	<b>mūnitus, -a, -um, (perf. part. of</b>
<b>Germānus, -ī, m.,</b> a German.	<b>mūniō),</b> fortified.
<b>corpus, -oris, n.,</b> body.	<b>primus, -a, -um, (sup. of prior),</b>
<b>māgnitūdō, -inis, f.,</b> size, mag-	first.
nitude.	<b>summus, -a, -um, (sup. of su-</b>
<b>oppūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,</b>	<b>perus),</b> very high, very great,
attack, storm.	top of.

## 124.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Germānī primā vigiliā castra nātūrā et arte mūnita oppūgnāverunt. 2. Germānī erant ingentī māgnitūdine corporum et incrēdibili virtūte. 3. Equitum multitudīne et celeritāte hostēs ā Rōmānīs superātī sunt. 4. Adulēscēntem summā hūmānitāte lēgātum in Britanniam mittit. 5. Oppidum summā vī oppūgnātum est primā vigiliā. 6. Dux fortis incrēdibili celeritāte ad montem properāverat et castra tertiāe legiōnis oppūgnāverat. 7. Urbs potēns bellō fuerat. 8. Corōna gravis data erat rēgīnae. 9. Puella māgnā diligentiā ā patre saepe laudāta est. 10. Imperātor idōneō tempore oppidum nātūrā mūnītum oppūgnābit.

II. 1. All men have been pleased by the skill of the great poet Homer. 2. The general, (a man) of great kindness, is pained by the wounds of his soldiers. 3. The poet was a man of great diligence and culture. 4. Men of great valor have been called into camp. 5. The Romans were surpassed by the Germans in stature (size of bodies). 6. The scouts hastened with incredible swiftness to a high mountain. 7. In a short time all the

citizens will have been called into the city. 8. The leaders of the cohorts are equal in stature and bravery. 9. The soldiers of Ariovistus, king of the Germans, wounded the cavalry of Cæsar with stones. 10. Suitable gifts have been given to all the good servants.



## CHAPTER XXII.

### Comparison of Adjectives.

#### *Declension of Comparatives; Ablative with Comparatives.*

**125.** Adjectives have in Latin as in English three degrees of comparison, — the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

Comparison may be regular or irregular.

#### **126.**

#### REGULAR COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
cārus (stem cāro-), <i>dear.</i>	cārīor, <i>dearer.</i>	cārissimus, <i>dearest.</i>
brevīs (stem brevi-), <i>short.</i>	brevīor, <i>shorter.</i>	brevissimus, <i>shortest.</i>
vēlōx (stem vėlōc-), <i>swift.</i>	vėlōcīor, <i>swifter.</i>	vėlōcissimus, <i>swiftest.</i>
potēns (stem potent-), <i>powerful.</i>	potentīor, <i>more powerful.</i>	potentissimus, <i>most powerful.</i>

Observe that the comparative is formed from the stem of the positive by dropping the stem-vowel, if there is

one, and adding *-ior*, and the superlative likewise by adding *-issimus*.<sup>1</sup>

Compare *altus*, *longus*, *lātus*, *laetus*, *grātus*, *perītus*, *fortis*, *gravis*.

### *Declension of Comparatives.*

#### 127.

#### PARADIGM.

**cārior, dearer. Stem cārior.**

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i>	cārior		cārius	cāriōrēs		cāriōra
<i>G.</i>	cāriōris			cāriōrum		
<i>D.</i>	cāriōri			cāriōribus		
<i>Ac.</i>	cāriōrem		cārius	cāriōrēs (-īs)		cāriōra
<i>Ab.</i>	cāriōre	or -ī		cāriōribus		

1. All comparatives are declined like *cārior*.
2. All superlatives are declined like *bonus*.
3. The comparative must sometimes be translated by *too* or *rather*, and the superlative by *very*.

**Bellum est longius, the war is rather long.**

**Bellum est longissimum, the war is very long.**

#### 128.

#### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Rēx est potentior quam cōnsul, a king is more powerful than a consul.**
2. **Rēx est potentior cōnsule, a king is more powerful than a consul.**

In what case is *cōnsul*? Why?

---

<sup>1</sup> Some adjectives are not compared by adding terminations, but by using *magis*, *more*, and *māximē*, *most*; as, *idōneus*, *suitable*; *magis idōneus*, *more suitable*; *māximē idōneus*, *most suitable*.

Observe that the sentences have the same meaning, and that the ablative *cōsule* is used instead of *quam cōsul*.

**129. RULE.** — *The comparative is followed by the ablative when **quam** (than) is omitted.*

This ablative can only be used instead of a nominative or accusative.

**130.****VOCABULARY.**

<b>altitūdō</b> , -inis, <i>f.</i> ( <i>altus</i> ), height, depth.	<b>perturbō</b> , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, throw into confusion, disturb greatly.
<b>animus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , mind, spirit.	<b>apud</b> ( <i>prep. with acc.</i> ), among, with.
<b>Orgetorix</b> , -īgis, <i>m.</i> , Orgetorix.	- <b>āc</b> ( <i>before consonants</i> ),
<b>nōbīlis</b> , -e, of high birth, famous, noble.	<b>atque</b> ( <i>before vowels and con- sonants</i> ), and.
<b>circumdō</b> , -āre, -dedī, -dātum, ( <i>circum</i> , around, and <i>dō</i> ), to put around, surround.	<b>quam</b> , <i>adv.</i> , than.

**131.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Rēgēs semper fuērunt potentiōrēs cīvibus,  
2. Iter ad altum montem est brevissimum. 3. Apud  
Helvētiōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. 4. Imperātor for-  
tior erat milite. 5. Flūmen est māgnā altitūdine et ad  
māgnās nāvēs idōneum. 6. Oppidum nātūrā mūnītum  
flūmine māgnā altitūdine circumdatum est. 7. Ariovistus  
et comes fuērunt parī māgnitūdine corporum. 8. Adu-  
lēscētēs animō perturbātī sunt ingentī māgnitūdine  
corporum et māgnā virtūte Germānōrum. 9. Pācis artēs  
grātiōrēs sunt bellī artibus. 10. Imperātor fuit summā  
virtūte ac hūmānitāte.

II. 1. Peace is more pleasant than war. 2. Seas are  
deeper and wider than rivers. 3. The Romans, by the

shortest route, and with incredible rapidity, had hurried to the city and had surrounded it with soldiers. 4. Among the Germans, Ariovistus was the bravest and most powerful. 5. The violence (*vis*) of the enemy greatly disturbs the minds of the women and children. 6. The javelin of the Roman soldier was longer than his sword. 7. The lieutenant makes a very long journey in a severe (sharp) winter. 8. The cavalry are very swift and very brave. 9. The town was attacked by a youth of great valor. 10. The river is rather deep.



## CHAPTER XXIII.

**Comparison of Adjectives. — Continued.***Partitive Genitive.***132. Adjectives in -er.**

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
1. miser (stem misero-), <i>wretched.</i>	miserior, -ius, <i>more wretched.</i>	miserrimus, -a, -um, <i>most wretched.</i>
2. celer (stem celeri-), <i>quick.</i>	celerior, -ius, <i>quicker.</i>	celerrimus, -a, -um, <i>quickest.</i>

Observe that the comparative of adjectives in -er is formed regularly, but that the superlative is formed by adding to the nominative singular masculine of the positive, -rimus, -a, -um.

Compare miser, ācer, pulcher.



**133.** Six adjectives in *-lis* form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the stem minus the stem-vowel.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>facilis, easy.</i>	<i>facillor.</i>	<i>facillimus.</i>
<i>difficilis, difficult.</i>	<i>difficillor.</i>	<i>difficillimus.</i>
<i>similis, like.</i>	<i>simillor.</i>	<i>simillimus.</i>
<i>dissimilis, unlike.</i>	<i>dissimillor.</i>	<i>dissimillimus.</i>
<i>gracilis, slender.</i>	<i>gracillor.</i>	<i>gracillimus.</i>
<i>humilis, low.</i>	<i>humillor.</i>	<i>humillimus.</i>

**134. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.**

- 1.** *Equitum fortissimī in Galliam properābunt, the bravest of the cavalry will hurry into Gaul.*
- 2.** *Decem obsidum liberātī sunt, ten of the hostages were set free.*
- 3.** *Multī militum vulnerātī erant, many of the soldiers had been wounded.*

Observe that each word limited by the genitive in the examples denotes a part of the whole denoted by the genitive.

**135. RULE.** — *The partitive genitive denotes the whole of which a part is taken.*

**136. VOCABULARY.**

<i>locus, -ī, m. (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.), place.</i>	<i>facilis, -e, easy.</i>
<i>mūrus, -ī, m., wall.</i>	<i>difficilis, -e, difficult.</i>
<i>nihil, n., indeclinable, nothing.</i>	<i>similis, -e, like, similar.</i>
	<i>dissimilis, -e, unlike.</i>

**137. EXERCISES.**

I. 1. *Carmina Homērī pulcherrima sunt omnium Graecōrum carminum.* 2. *Aestāte in Britannīā nox est brevissima.* 3. *Mōrēs frātris et sorōris sunt dissimillimī.*

4. Pueri liber est facillimus, viri difficillimus. 5. Nihil est grātius quam multitudō amicōrum. 6. Frātrēs et sorōrēs sunt mōribus simillimī. 7. Dux Rōmānōrum, nōbilis adulēscēns, summā (*depth of*) hieme oppidum Germānōrum oppugnāvit. 8. Pars peditum in altissimō mūrō stat et in hostēs pīla ac lapidēs mittit. 9. Bre-vissimō tempore lēgātus locum altissimō mūrō circumdat. 10. Germānis fuit nihil hūmānitātis. 11. Adulēscēntem ingentī corporis māgnitūdine et summā virtūte ad Caesarem mittit.

II. 1. Many books are very easy, many very difficult. 2. Among the Romans the most powerful were not always men of the noblest birth. 3. The horses of Britain are very swift. 4. The farmer's black horse is swifter than the white (one). 5. Ariovistus was wounded in the foot. 6. Around the consul there were always young men of great culture and good character. 7. They attack on (*ex*) all sides with loud (great) shouts and throw the ranks into confusion. 8. A part of the soldiers of Orgetorix were attacked in a place very strongly fortified by nature. 9. A wall of great height was put around the place with incredible quickness. 10. In a very short time they will be attacked with incredible violence.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

**Irregular Comparison.** — *Continued.**Ablative of Difference.*

**138.** Four adjectives with regular comparatives have two irregular superlatives.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
exterus, outward.	exterior, <i>outer or more outward.</i>	extrēmus and extimus, outermost or last.
īferus, <i>low.</i>	īnferior, <i>lower.</i>	īnfinus and īmus, <i>lowest.</i>
posterus, following.	posterior, <i>later.</i>	postrēmus and postumus, last.
superus, upper.	superior, <i>higher.</i>	suprēmus and summus, top of, highest.

These adjectives are used mainly in the comparative and superlative.

**139.** The following are irregular throughout: —

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, <i>good.</i>	melior, melius, <i>better.</i>	optimus, <i>best.</i>
malus, <i>bad.</i>	pēior, pēius, <i>worse.</i>	pessimus, <i>worst.</i>
māgnus, <i>great.</i>	māior, māius, <i>greater.</i>	māximus, <i>greatest.</i>
multus, <i>much.</i>	—, plūs, <sup>1</sup> <i>more.</i>	plūrimus, <i>most.</i>
multī, <i>many.</i>	plūrēs, plūra, <i>more.</i>	plūrimī, <i>most.</i>
parvus, <i>small.</i>	minor, minus, <i>smaller.</i>	minimus, <i>smallest.</i>
senex, <i>old.</i>	senior (māior nātū), older, elder.	māximus nātū, oldest, eldest.
iuvenis, <i>young.</i>	iūnior (minor nātū), younger.	minimus nātū, youngest.

---

<sup>1</sup> The neuter **plūs**, nom. and acc., and the gen. **plūris**, are the only forms used in the singular.

**140.** Some comparatives and superlatives have no positive, but are apparently formed from adverbs or prepositions.

	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
prae, prō (prep., <i>before</i> ).	prior, <i>former</i> .	prīmus, <i>first</i> .
prope (adv., <i>near</i> ).	propior, <i>nearer</i> .	proximus, <i>nearest</i> .

**141. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.**

1. **Pater capite māior est quam filius,** *the father is a head taller (larger by a head) than the son.*
2. **Titus decem annis senior est quam frāter,** *Titus is ten years older (older by ten years) than his brother.*
3. **Arbor decem pedibus altior est quam mūrus,** *the tree is ten feet higher (higher by ten feet) than the wall.*

An ablative like *capite*, *annis*, or *pedibus*, with comparatives and words of comparison, showing how much one thing differs from another, is called an *ablative of difference*.

**142. RULE.** — *The degree of difference is denoted by the ablative.*

**143. VOCABULARY.**

<b>Allobrogēs</b> , -um, <i>m.</i> , the Allobroges.	<b>superus</b> , -a, -um, upper.
<b>Genāva</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Geneva.	<b>exterus</b> , -a, -um, outward, outer.
<b>Lablēnus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , Labienus.	<b>extrēmus</b> , -a, -um, furthest, extreme.
<b>lūx</b> , <b>lūcis</b> , <i>f.</i> , light.	<b>propior</b> , -ius, nearer.
<b>nātū</b> , <i>m.</i> ( <i>abl. of nātus</i> ), in age.	<b>proximus</b> , -a, -um, nearest, next.
<b>māior nātū</b> (greater in age), older.	<b>prior</b> , -ius, former.
<b>iuvenis</b> , -e, young; <i>as a noun</i> , a young man.	<b>senex</b> , <b>senis</b> ( <i>m. only</i> ), old; <i>as a noun</i> , an old man.

## 144.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Iulia multis annis iunior quam frater est. 2. Filii optimorum patrum saepe pessimi sunt. 3. Malus est Orgetorix, peior frater. 4. Labienus decem annis est minor natu Caesare. 5. Extrimum oppidum Allobrogum est Genava. 6. Sorore Iulia est pede altior. 7. Summus mons prima luce a Labieno occupatus est. 8. Propior puerorum Labieni filius est. 9. Milites e loco superiore in hostes pila mittunt. 10. Caesar priore aestate Bibracte oppugnaverat. 11. Virtute atque humanitate Titus apud Graecos laudatus est. 12. Pax melior est quam bellum.

II. 1. The manners of the girls are better than (those) of the boys. 2. Men very unlike are often friends. 3. Part of the soldiers were much disturbed in the night by a great shouting. 4. Orgetorix surrounded the place with a very high wall. 5. The poems of Homer are not very difficult. 6. The first part of the journey was very easy, but the last more difficult. 7. The mother and her daughter are very unlike. 8. Is the valor of the soldier more pleasing than the diligence of the farmer? 9. Nothing delights everybody (*omnes*). 10. He was older than his brother, and more famous among the Helvetians.

## CHAPTER XXV.

## Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

## 145.

## ADJECTIVES.

## ADVERBS.

- |  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. miser (stem misero-), <i>wretched</i> . | miserē, <i>wretchedly</i> . |
| cārus (stem cāro-), <i>dear</i> .          | cārē, <i>dearly</i> .       |

Observe that adverbs from adjectives of the first and second declension are formed by dropping the final vowel of the stem and adding *ē*.<sup>1</sup>

Form adverbs from *grātus*, *laetus*, *pulcher*.

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 2. ācer (stem ācri-), <i>sharp</i> .     | ācritēr, <i>sharply</i> .     |
| vēlōx (stem vēlōc-), <i>swift</i> .      | vēlōcītēr, <i>swiftly</i> .   |
| potēns (stem potent-), <i>powerful</i> . | potentēr, <i>powerfully</i> . |

Observe that adverbs from adjectives of the third declension are formed by adding to the stem *-ter* or *-iter*. Stems ending in *nt* drop *t* before the addition.

3. Sometimes the neuter accusative and sometimes the ablative of the adjective is used as an adverb; as, *multum*, *much*; *facile*, *easily*; *primō*, *first*.

## 146.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
cārē, <i>dearly</i> .	cārius.	cārissimē.
celeriter, <i>quickly</i> .	celerius.	celerrimē.
vēlōciter, <i>swiftly</i> .	vēlōcius.	vēlōcissimē.

Observe that in the comparative the adverb is the same as the neuter of the adjective, and that the superlative of

<sup>1</sup> The adverbs from *bonus* and *malus* are formed irregularly, — *benē*, *malē*.

the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective regularly See 145. 1.

## 147.

## VOCABULARY.

**Belgae**, -ārum, *m.*, the Belgians.

**causa**, -ae, *f.*, reason, cause ;  
*abl. sing.*, for the sake of.

**fuga**, -ae, *f.*, flight.

**Gallus**, -i, *m.*, a Gaul.

**proelium**, -i, *n.*, battle.

**ventus**, -i, *m.*, wind.

**prō**, *prep. with the abl.*, before, in behalf of, for.

**ācritēr**, *adv.*, sharply.

**celeritēr**, *adv.*, quickly.

**facile**, *adv.*, easily.

**fortitēr**, *adv.*, bravely.

**gravitēr**, *adv.*, deeply.

**vēlōcitēr**, *adv.*, swiftly.

## 148.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ventī māgnitūdine minus vēlōciter currit nūntius. 2. Graviter hominēs ex malīs līberōrum mōribus dolent. 3. Locus altissimō mūrō mūnitus ab Allobrogibus facile occupātus est. 4. Labiēnus ad Genāvam properāvit et primā lūce oppidum occupāvit. 5. Proximō proeliō Helvētiī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuērunt. 6. Iuvenēs sunt similēs nōmine, sed mōribus dissimillimī. 7. Multis dē causis Belgae sunt omnium Gallōrum fortissimī. 8. Caesar celeriter hostēs in fugam dat (*puts*). 9. Prō patriā omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnābunt. 10. Minor puerōrum celerius currit quam māior.

II. 1. The march was more difficult on account of a high (*māgnus*) wind. 2. All the Gauls fought bravely for their native land. 3. All the higher places had been seized by the Belgians. 4. He will hasten by forced (very great) marches into the farthest territory (*pl.*) of the Belgians. 5. The Romans used to have longer swords than the Germans. 6. The brothers were very unlike. 7. Julia is a year younger than (*her*) brother. 8. Mothers are glad

to labor (gladly labor) for (their) children. 9. A horse runs more swiftly than a man. 10. Nothing easily threw Cæsar's legions into confusion.



## CHAPTER XXVI.

Fourth or *u*-Declension.

*Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Active.*

## 149. PARADIGMS.

	exercitus, <i>m., army.</i>		cornū, <i>n., horn.</i>	
	Stem exercitu-		Stem cornu-	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., V.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>G.</i>	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
<i>D.</i>	exercitui (ū)	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Ac.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Ab.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

1. The stems of the fourth declension end in *-u*.
2. To find the stem, drop *um* of the genitive plural.
3. Make a table of terminations for both nouns.
4. GENDER. — Nouns of the fourth declension ending in *-us* are almost all masculine ; in *-ū*, neuter.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

150. Learn the principal parts and present indicative active of *habēō* (p. 208).

1. How do the terminations of the present tense differ from those of *amō* ?



2. What is the present stem? See 56. 1.
3. Verbs of the second conjugation may be recognized by the ending *-ēre* of the present infinitive active.

## 151.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>cornū</b> , -ūs, <i>n.</i> , horn, wing (of an army).	<b>doleō</b> , -ēre, <b>dolui</b> , be pained, grieved.
<b>exercitus</b> , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , army.	<b>habeō</b> , -ēre, -uī, -itum, have.
<b>impetus</b> , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , attack, violence.	<b>moveō</b> , -ēre, <b>mōvi</b> , <b>mōtum</b> , move.
<b>uxor</b> , -ōris, <i>f.</i> , wife.	<b>teneō</b> , -ēre, -uī, <b>tentum</b> , hold.
<b>cottidiānus</b> , -a, -um, daily.	<b>terreō</b> , -ēre, -uī, <b>territum</b> , frighten.
<b>dexter</b> , -tra, -trum, right.	<b>ferē</b> , <i>adv.</i> , almost.

## 152.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Labiēnus exercitum in castris tenet, et hostium dux dextrum cornū celeriter in superiorem locum movet. 2. Dextrum Allobrogum cornū ab hostibus superabatur. 3. Britannia est fortissimorum virorum patria. 4. Gallorum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae et ferē cottidiānis proeliis cum Germānis pugnāt. 5. Primō impetū Labiēnus exercitum hostium in fugam dat. 6. Ariovistus Caesarem nōn prō amīcō sed prō hoste habet. 7. Genāva primā luce ā Caesare occupāta est. 8. Iuvenēs prō patriā fortiter pugnābunt. 9. Uxorem ex Helvētiis habet. 10. Properat in altiorem locum castra movēre. 11. Proximā nocte exercitum ex oppidō movet et primā luce dextrum Belgārum cornū ācritur oppūgnat.

II. 1. High winds do not easily frighten the sailors. 2. The year before<sup>1</sup> the place had been surrounded by a high wall. 3. The flight of the cavalry very much dis-

<sup>1</sup> See 144. I. 10.

turbs the mind of the commander-in-chief. 4. All the young men march swiftly in the night against the army of Labienus. 5. At daybreak they make a violent (sharp) attack upon the right wing. 6. The horsemen make almost daily attacks upon the army of Cæsar. 7. He quickly moves (his) camp from the territory of the Allobroges into the territory of the Helvetians. 8. The wrongs done to (wrongs of) the Roman people were the cause of the war. 9. The general is deeply pained by the flight of (his) army. 10. Labienus was ten years older than (his) wife. 11. The cavalry sharply attack a town in the most distant territories of the Gauls.



## CHAPTER XXVII.

### Second Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active.

#### *Dative with Adjectives.*

**153.** Learn the imperfect and future indicative active of *habēō*.

Compare the endings with those of the same tenses of *amō*, and observe that they differ only in the final vowel of the stem.

#### **154.** ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Puella est cāra māt̄rī*, the girl is dear to her mother.
2. *Helvētīī proximī erant Germānīs*, the Helvetians were nearest to the Germans.
3. *Oppidum est urbī similis*, a town is like a city.

Observe that in each of these sentences the dative is dependent upon an adjective, and shows to what the quality denoted by the adjective applies.

**155. RULE.** — *Many adjectives take a dative to define their application.*

These are chiefly adjectives of fitness, nearness, likeness, friendliness, and their opposites.

**156.****VOCABULARY.**

<b>commeātus</b> , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , supplies.	<b>potestās</b> , -ātis, <i>f.</i> , power.
<b>cōpia</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , abundance; <i>in pl.</i> , (military) forces.	<b>Vergilius</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , Virgil.
<b>manus</b> , -ūs, <i>f.</i> , hand.	<b>novus</b> , -a, -um, new.
<b>memoria</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , memory.	<b>sinister</b> , -tra, -trum, left.
<b>portus</b> , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , harbor, port.	<b>videō</b> , -ēre, <b>vidī</b> , <b>visum</b> , see.

**157.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Omnia oppida Belgārum in Caesaris potestāte fuērunt. 2. Carmina Vergilī, poētae Rōmānī, carminibus Homērī, poētae Graecī, similia sunt. 3. Locus castris nātūrā est idōneus. 4. Caesar novōs milītēs in castris tenēbit. 5. Sinistrum exercitūs cornū ab hostibus superrātum est. 6. Puella dextrā manū librum, sinistrā rosam tenēbat. 7. Caesaris exercituī nihil fuit difficile. 8. Primā lūce multae nāvēs longae in portū fuērunt. 9. Caesar iniuriās Helvētiōrum memoriā tenēbat. 10. Dux in summō monte cōpiās hostium vidēbit. 11. Cōpia commeātūs ex Galliā celeriter portābātur.

II. 1. The almost daily attacks of the Gauls frighten the recruits (new soldiers). 2. The sailor's wife was much disturbed by the violence of the wind. 3. The

memory of wrongs is often the cause of war. 4. The flight of the soldiers deeply grieves the leader. 5. The general will easily procure supplies suitable for (his) whole army. 6. The Gauls fought bravely in defence of their native land. 7. He will quickly move his camp to a higher place. 8. The young man will see many ships in the harbors of Britain. 9. He has in the town a great supply of grain. 10. At daybreak the Belgians violently attack (make an attack violently against) the left wing.



## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active.

**158.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative active of *habēō*.

What is the perfect stem of *habēō*? See 74. 1.

### **159.** EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Orgetorix commeātum habēbat, habēbit. 2. Clāmōre equum terrēbit, terruit. 3. Labiēnum dextrā manu, sinistrā Titum tenēbat. 4. Liberōs et uxōrēs Germānōrum explorātor vidēbit, viderat. 5. Castra minōra vidēmus, vidimus. 6. Nihil iuvenēs terrēbit, terruit. 7. Ubi equitem celerem vidistī, viderās? 8. Summum montem primā lūce tenēbimus, tenēbāmus. 9. Iniuriās memoriā tenuerat, tenuerit. 10. Fuga equitum peditum animōs perturbābat.

II. 1. We have supplies in the town. 2. The legion had a camp on the top of the mountain. 3. You will have a supply of grain. 4. The high wind was frightening the girls. 5. Where did you see a camp? 6. Was Dumnorix in Caesar's power? 7. They will see a large number of men. 8. They were moving (their) children from the city. 9. They moved (their) wives into the city. 10. The Belgians bravely attacked the camp.

## 160.

## VOCABULARY.

**āgmen**, -inis, *n.*, column, troops (in motion); **novissimum āgmen**, the rear; **primum āgmen**, the van. **centuriō**, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion. **Dumnorix**, -igis, *m.*, Dumnorix. **occāsus**, -ūs, *m.*, a setting. **Rhēnus**, -i, *m.*, the Rhine. **sōl**, sōlis, *m.*, sun. **inferus**, -a, -um, low. **propter**, (*prep. with acc.*), on account of.

**contineō**, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, (*cum and teneō*), to hold together, restrain, hem in. **pertineō**, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, (*per and teneō*), to hold through, extend. **prohibeō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, (*prō and habeō*), to hold off, hinder from, check. **sustineō**, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, (*sub and teneō*), to hold under, withstand, endure.

## 161.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar omnēs cōpiās in castris continuit. 2. Dextrum cornū Belgārum impetūs exercitūs Rōmānī facile sustinuerat. 3. Occāsū sōlis ad concilium centuriōnēs omnium ōrdinum convocātī sunt. 4. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī pertinēbant. 5. Clāmor mīlitum novissimum āgmen Belgārum terruerat. 6. Iūdicis uxor sinistrā manū carmina Vergili tenuit. 7. Propter māgnitūdinem ventī omnēs ferē nāvēs in portū tenuerāmus. 8. Vidi-

stine māgnam cōpiam nāvium longārum in portū ?  
 9. Equitibus cōpiās Dumnorigis commeātū prohibuimus.  
 10. Imperātor ad locum castris nātūrā idōneum exercitum  
 mōverit. 11. Habuistīne Dumnorigem in potestāte ?  
 12. Prīmum āgmen ab hōrā tertiā ad sōlis occāsum  
 impetūs hostium sustinuit.

II. 1. The right wing was lower than the left.  
 2. Dumnorix was not pleasing to Cæsar. 3. He will  
 hold in memory the wrongs of (our) country. 4. We  
 hastened with almost all (our) forces to the river and  
 checked the van of the enemy. 5. The Belgians fought (in)  
 almost daily battles with the Germans. 6. He kept the  
 legion in camp on account of the wounds of the centurions.  
 7. Cæsar easily hindered the Helvetians from (their)  
 journey. 8. There had been a very large supply of grain  
 in the town. 9. We had seen a harbor suitable for war-  
 vessels. 10. Boys, did the territories of the Belgæ extend  
 to the river Rhine ?



## CHAPTER XXIX.

### Second Conjugation : Present Indicative Passive.

#### *Fifth Declension.*

**162.** Learn the present indicative passive of *habēō*.

1. Compare the endings with the corresponding endings of *amō*.

2. Like *habēō* conjugate the present indicative passive of *terreō*, *moveō*, and *videō*.

## 163.

## PARADIGM.

	<i>diēs, day.</i>		<i>rēs, thing.</i>	
	Stem <i>diē-</i>		Stem <i>rē-</i>	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., V.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

1. How are the stems of these nouns found ?
2. Make a table of the terminations.
3. *Diēs* and *rēs* are the only nouns of this declension which have all the cases of both numbers. The others are wanting in the plural wholly or in part.
4. GENDER. — Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except *diēs*, which is usually masculine in the singular, always masculine in the plural.

## 164.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>aciēs, -ēi, f.,</i> line of battle.	<i>posterus, -a, -um,</i> following, after.
<i>diēs, -ēi, m.,</i> day.	
<i>Divitiacus, -i, m.,</i> Divitiacus.	<i>expūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,</i> take by storm.
<i>fidēs, -ei, f.,</i> confidence.	
<i>rēs, -ei, f.,</i> thing, affair.	<i>incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,</i> urge on, arouse, incite.
<i>pauci, -ae, -a,</i> few.	
<i>pedester, -tris, -tre,</i> of infantry, on foot.	<i>valeō, -ēre, valui,</i> be strong.

## 165.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Posterō diē exercitus in castris ā Caesare continētur.* 2. *Divitiacō<sup>1</sup> Caesar mǎximam fidem habēbat.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Dative.

3. Vergilius optimus poëtarum Rōmānōrum habetur. 4. Impetus hostium ā tertiā aciē sustinetur. 5. Multae rēs populum Rōmānum ad bellum incitābant. 6. Rōmānī pedestribus cōpiīs plūrimum valēbant. 7. Oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus expūgnātum est. 8. Memoria priōrum proeliōrum centuriōnēs dēlectābat. 9. Helvētiī flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō continentur. 10. Occāsū sōlis ā civibus in summō monte novissimum āgmen videtur. 11. Commētūs<sup>1</sup> causā in finēs Allobrogum exercitus properāvit. 12. Peditēs ex inferiōre locō pīla in cōpiās hostium mittunt.

II. 1. A harbor suitable for war-vessels is seen by the scout. 2. The infantry are kept from the territories of the Belgians by an attack of the cavalry. 3. Slaves are in the power of (their) masters. 4. Is the pupil's book held in the left hand? 5. We soldiers are kept in camp on account of our wounds. 6. In the next summer the Gauls were aroused to war by a few chiefs. 7. The territory of the Belgians extends to the river Rhine. 8. A day is longer in summer than in winter. 9. Not all things are difficult. 10. The king is strong in the great number of (his) cavalry. 11. The line of battle was very long. 12. The town had been taken by storm in the first part of the summer. 13. I have the greatest confidence in (my) father.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The ablative *causā*, for the sake of, is used with the genitive, which regularly precedes it.

<sup>2</sup> See I. 2, note.



## CHAPTER XXX.

## Second Conjugation : Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive.

*Nine Irregular Adjectives.*

**166.** Learn the imperfect and future indicative passive of *habeō*.

Like *habeō* conjugate the imperfect and future indicative passive of *moveō*, *teneō*, and *videō*.

**167.** The following adjectives, regular in the plural, end in *-ius* in the genitive singular, and in *-ī* in the dative singular.

<i>alius, other.</i>	<i>tōtus, whole.</i>	<i>alter, the other (of two).</i>
<i>nūllus, no, none.</i>	<i>ūllus, any.</i>	<i>neuter, neither (of two).</i>
<i>sōlus, alone.</i>	<i>ūnus, one.</i>	<i>ūter, which (of two).</i>

**168. PARADIGMS.**

<b>alius, other.</b>			<b>ūnus, one.</b>				
Stem <b>alio-, alla-</b>			Stem <b>ūno-, ūna-</b>				
SINGULAR.							
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>		<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<b>alius</b>	<b>alia</b>	<b>aliud</b>		<b>ūnus</b>	<b>ūna</b>	<b>ūnum</b>
<i>G.</i>	<b>alius</b>	<b>alius</b>	<b>alius</b>		<b>ūnius</b>	<b>ūnius</b>	<b>ūnius</b>
<i>D.</i>	<b>alii</b>	<b>alii</b>	<b>alii</b>		<b>ūnī</b>	<b>ūnī</b>	<b>ūnī</b>
<i>Ac.</i>	<b>alium</b>	<b>aliām</b>	<b>aliud</b>		<b>ūnum</b>	<b>ūnām</b>	<b>ūnum</b>
<i>Ab.</i>	<b>aliō</b>	<b>aliā</b>	<b>aliō</b>		<b>ūnō</b>	<b>ūnā</b>	<b>ūnō</b>

Notice that *alius* has *d*, not *m*, in the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

## 169.

## VOCABULARY.

civitas, -ātis, *f.*, state.Iūra, -ae, *m.*, the Jura (mountains).lātitudō, -inis, *f.*, (lātus), width.Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone.

alius, -a, -ud, other.

alter, -era, -erum, other (of two).

sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only.

tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire.

ūnus, -a, -um, one.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, to fear.

undique, *adv.*, on all sides.

## 170.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Undique loci naturā Helvetiī continēbantur; unā ex parte, flūmine Rhodanō lātissimō; alterā ex parte, monte Iūrā altissimō. 2. Divitiacus sōlus ex omnī civitate Germānis liberōs obsidēs nōn dedit. 3. Propter magnitudinem silvārum et lātitudinem flūminum iter timebat. 4. Multae res Orgetorigem ad aliud proelium incitābant. 5. Paucis diebus oppidum ab hostibus tenēbitur. 6. Alii aliā re<sup>1</sup> valent. 7. Centuriōnēs sōlī posterō diē in concilium ā Caesare convocāti sunt. 8. Pedestria itinera ā nautis habēbantur difficillima. 9. Aciēs Rōmāna ā flūmine ad infimum<sup>2</sup> montem pertinēbat. 10. Facile erit commeātū hostēs prohibēre. 11. Imperātor centuriōnibus<sup>3</sup> māximam fidem habēbat. 12. Tōtum āgmen unō tempore vidēbitur.

II. 1. On account of the height of the wall, he did not take the town by storm. 2. The attacks of the enemy were bravely endured by the whole line. 3. The cavalry make a violent (*acer*) attack on the Roman column. 4. He has great confidence in the whole army.<sup>3</sup> 5. Some centurions were wounded on one day, others on another. 6. The camp will be moved to a higher place

<sup>1</sup> Others in another thing; i.e. Some in one thing, others in another.

<sup>2</sup> Lowest, lowest part of, base of.

<sup>3</sup> See 165. I. 2.

in a few days. 7. In one hand he held a book, in the other a stone. 8. Cæsar with the third legion alone will storm the town. 9. The village is hemmed in on all sides by very high mountains. 10. A place is being prepared for another band of Germans. 11. The whole state feared the name of Ariovistus.

## 171.

## READING LESSON.

NOTE.—In the reading lessons, all words not previously given in the special vocabularies are translated in parentheses. This does not apply to numerals, which must be sought in Chapters XXXII. and XXXIII.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 1-4.]

Galliae omnis sunt partēs trēs. Ūnīus partis Belgae sunt incolae, aliūs Aquitānī (*Aquitanians*), tertiæ Celtæ (*Celts*). Rōmānī Celtās Gallōs vocābant. Gallōrum omnium fortissimī erant Belgæ. Belgæ sæpe cum Germānīs pūgnābant. Belgæ et Helvētīī proximī erant Germānīs. Helvētīī ferē cottidiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs pūgnābant. Belgæ continēbantur marī, Rhēnō flūmine, Mātronā (*Marne*) et Sēquanā (*Seine*) flūminibus. Gallī finibus Belgārum, Rhēnō et Rhodanō flūminibus, Garumnā (*Garonne*) flūmine, marī continēbantur. Aquitānī ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs (*Pyrenees*) montēs et mare pertinēbant. Apud Helvētīōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx. Helvētīī undique locī nātūrā continēbantur. In aliam partem Galliae iter facere (*to make*) parābant. Orgetorīgem lēgātum ad aliōs Gallōs mīserunt (*they sent*). In itinere Casticum (*Casticus*, a man's name) Sēquanum (*a Sequanian*) et Dumnorīgem Aeduum (*an Aeduan*) amīcōs facit. Dumnorīgī fīliam dat uxōrem. Orgetorīgī<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See 48 and 49.

in animō erat rēx esse in Helvētiis. Casticus et Dumnorix Orgetorigem iuvābant. Rēs Helvētiis narrāta est et Orgetorix accūsātus est. Servōs et amīcōs convocāvit. Per amīcōs et servōs liberātus est, sed paucīs diēbus post (*afterward*) mortuus est (*he died*).



## CHAPTER XXXI.

### Second Conjugation : Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive.

**172.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative passive of *habēō*.

For explanation in regard to these tenses, see **119**. 1, 2, and 3.

### **173.** EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Corpore ac animō centuriō valēbat. 2. Titus corpore plūs valet quam animō. 3. Posterō diē castra moventur, movēbuntur. 4. Castra celeriter mōta sunt, mōta erant. 5. Paucī equitum ab explōrātōre vīsī sunt, vīsī erant. 6. Obsidēs in potestāte Caesaris tenēbantur, tenēbuntur. 7. Aliī hostēs, aliī longitudinem itineris timēbant, timuerant. 8. Ā cūstōde vidēberis, vīsus erās. 9. Flūminibus continēbimur, continēmur. 10. Legiōnēs in castris continēbantur, contentae sunt.

II. 1. The line of battle was extending, it will extend to the foot of (*infimus*) the mountain. 2. The attack had been sustained, it will be sustained. 3. Dumnorix alone

will be kept, he has been kept in Cæsar's power. 4. You had been seen, you have been seen by the soldier's wife. 5. We shall be seen, we shall have been seen in the city in a few days. 6. The judge is feared, he will be feared by the bad only. 7. The cavalry had been kept from the Rhone. 8. The state was incited, it will be incited to war by the slaughter of the citizens. 9. The town had been taken by storm the year before. 10. We will attack, we were attacking the left wing.

## 174.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>auctōritās</b> , -ātis, <i>f.</i> , influence, authority.	<b>duo</b> , two.
<b>Bellovacī</b> , -ōrum, <i>m.</i> , the Bel-lovacī.	<b>noster</b> , -tra, -trum, our.
<b>Casticus</b> , -i, <i>m.</i> , Casticus.	<b>obtineō</b> , -ēre, -uī, -tentum, hold.
<b>prōvincia</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , province.	<b>compleō</b> , -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill, cover.
<b>rēgnum</b> , -i, <i>n.</i> , kingdom, royal power.	<b>inter</b> ( <i>prep. with acc.</i> ), between, among.
<b>Sēquanus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , a Sequanian.	<b>omniñō</b> , <i>adv.</i> , altogether, in all.

## 175.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Helvētiīs erant omniñō itinera duo; ūnum per Sēquanōs inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum; alterum per prōvinciam nostram.* 2. *Rēgnum in cīvitāte Sēquanōrum ā Casticī patre obtentum est.* 3. *Tōtus mōns ā Caesare complētus est hominibus.* 4. *Orgetorigis auctōritās inter Helvētiōs nōn parva erat.* 5. *Pedestrēs cōpiās sōlās Sēquanī timēbant.* 6. *Aliī in aliam partem equōs incitābant.* 7. *Plūrimum inter Belgās Bellovacōrum auctōritās et<sup>1</sup> virtūte et hominum numerō valēbat.* 8. *Cae-*

<sup>1</sup> Et . . . et, both . . . and.

sar tertiæ legiōnis militibus summam fidem habēbat.  
 9. Rhodanus flūmen est inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum. 10. Posterō diē nostra aciēs superiōrem locum obtinuit.

II. 1. The young man had few friends, the old man many. 2. Our soldiers quickly took the town by storm. 3. Orgetorix did not seize the royal power in the Helvetian state. 4. The whole camp had been filled with the enemy. 5. There was only one legion in Gaul. 6. The sons will be praised by their fathers for their diligence. 7. Have you seen many large rivers? 8. Cæsar had confidence in the third legion only. 9. The town was bounded on one side by a stream of great width, on the other by a high mountain. 10. The judge is a man of great influence among our citizens.



## CHAPTER XXXII.

### Third Conjugation : Present Indicative Active.

#### *Cardinal Numbers; Accusative of Extent.*

**176.** Learn from the vocabulary the principal parts of *dūcō*. What is the present stem? See 56. 1.

Verbs of the third conjugation may be recognized by the ending *-ere* of the present infinitive active.

**177.** Learn the present indicative active of *dūcō* (p. 211).

Notice that the stem-vowel *ē* is lost before *-ō*, becomes *ū* before *-nt*, and *ī* before other endings.

**178.****CARDINAL NUMERALS.**

1. <i>ūnus, ūna, ūnum</i>	30. <i>trīgintā</i>
2. <i>duo, duae, duo</i>	40. <i>quadrāgintā</i>
3. <i>trēs, tria</i>	50. <i>quīnquāgintā</i>
4. <i>quattuor</i>	60. <i>sexāgintā</i>
5. <i>quīnque</i>	70. <i>septuāgintā</i>
6. <i>sex</i>	80. <i>octōgintā</i>
7. <i>septem</i>	90. <i>nōnāgintā</i>
8. <i>octō</i>	100. <i>centum</i>
9. <i>novem</i>	101. <i>centum ūnus or centum et ūnus</i>
10. <i>decem</i>	102. <i>centum duo or centum et duo</i>
11. <i>ūndecim</i>	200. <i>ducentī, -ae, -a</i>
12. <i>duodecim</i>	300. <i>trecentī, -ae, -a</i>
13. <i>tredecim</i>	400. <i>quadringentī, -ae, -a</i>
14. <i>quattuordecim</i>	500. <i>quīngentī, -ae, -a</i>
15. <i>quīndecim</i>	600. <i>sēscentī, -ae, -a</i>
16. <i>sēdecim</i>	700. <i>septingentī, -ae, -a</i>
17. <i>septendecim</i>	800. <i>octingentī, -ae, -a</i>
18. <i>duodēvīgintī (octōdecim)</i>	900. <i>nōngentī, -ae, -a</i>
19. <i>ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)</i>	1000. <i>mille</i>
20. <i>vīgintī</i>	2000. <i>duo mīlia</i>
21. <i>vīgintī ūnus or ūnus et vīgintī</i>	10,000. <i>decem mīlia</i>
22. <i>vīgintī duo or duo et vīgintī</i>	100,000. <i>centum mīlia</i>
28. <i>duodētrīgintā</i>	
29. <i>ūndētrīgintā</i>	

**179.****DECLENSION OF CARDINALS.**

Cardinal numerals are indeclinable except *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, the hundreds from *ducentī* to *nōngentī* inclusive, and *mīlia*, the plural of *mille*. For the declension of *ūnus* see 168.

Duo and trēs are thus declined : —

## 180.

## PARADIGMS.

duo, two.			trēs, three.		
Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. duo	duae	duo	, trēs	trēs	tria
G. duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	trium
D. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
Ac. duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
Ab. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

1. The hundreds, ducentī to nōngentī, are declined like the plural of bonus.

2. In the singular mille is generally an adjective, but the plural milia is always a noun of the neuter gender, declined like the neuter plural of trēs, and is followed by the partitive genitive; as, mille militēs, *a thousand soldiers*; but tria milia militum, *three thousand soldiers (three thousands of soldiers)*.

## 181.

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. Caesar paucōs diēs in oppidō exercitum continēbat,  
*Cæsar kept his army in the town for a few days.*
2. Legiōnēs multōs annōs in Galliā fuerant, *the legions had been many years in Gaul.*
3. Flūmen est pedēs trēs altum, *the river is three feet deep.*
4. Puer sēscēntōs passūs currit, *the boy runs six hundred paces.*

Observe that diēs and annōs denote duration of time, and are in the accusative case. They answer the question, *How long?* Observe, also, that pedēs and passūs denote extent of space, and are in the accusative. They answer the question, *How far?*



**182. RULE.** — *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

**183.****VOCABULARY.**

**longitūdō, -inis, f.,** length.

**passus, -ūs, m.,** a pace.

**quot, indeclinable adj.,** how many.

**trēs, three.**

**quattuor, four.**

**quinque, five.**

**sex, six.**

**vigintī, twenty.**

**quadrāgintā, forty.**

**sexāgintā, sixty.**

**octōgintā, eighty.**

**centum, one hundred.**

**ducenti, -ae, -a, two hundred.**

**trecenti, -ae, -a, three hundred.**

**mille, one thousand.**

**currō, -ere, cucurri, cursum, run.**

**gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum, do; bellum gerere, carry on war.**

**mittō, -ere, misi, missum, send.**

**184.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Mēsa erat trēs pedēs longa, et duōs pedēs lāta.  
2. Finēs Helvētiōrum in longitūdinem mīlia passuum centum et octōgintā pertinēbant. 3. Belgae cum Germānīs multōs annōs bellum gerunt.<sup>1</sup> 4. Nostri<sup>2</sup> multās hōrās cum hostibus pūgnābant. 5. Quot diēs habet annus? Trecentōs et sexāgintā quinque. 6. Ē prōvinciā in finēs Allobrogum quinque legiōnēs lēgātus mittit. 7. Quot equitēs erant in castris? Equitum mīlia erant omnīnō sex. 8. Labiēnus tōtum diem iter facit, et occāsū sōlis oppidum mīlia passuum sex ā Belgīs occupat. 9. Arbor in hortō sexāgintā pedēs alta est. 10. Divitiacus nostrā memoriā rēgnum māgnae partis Galliae obtinuit. 11. Lēgātus cum sōlā decimā legiōne prōvinciam obtinēbit.

<sup>1</sup> English, *have been*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> See 51, foot-note.

II. 1. The forest is six miles long and four miles wide. 2. There were in the army forty thousand five hundred men. 3. How many hours were there in a day among the Romans? Twelve. 4. One seized the royal power in one state, another in another. 5. The route between the river Rhone and the Jura mountains was difficult. 6. The influence of Dumnorix among the Helvetii was greater than (that) of Divitiacus. 7. Cæsar held one mountain, the enemy the other. 8. The towns of the Sequanians were filled with our men. 9. How many miles does the city extend? 10. The army marches forty miles in two days.

## 185.

## READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 5-9.]

Helvëtiis in animō erat per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter facere (*to make*). Frūmentum et multās aliās rēs in itinere portāre parābant. Duo omnīnō itinera erant: ūnum difficile, per Sēquanōrum finēs, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, alterum per prōvinciam Rōmānam, multō facilius. Allobrogēs ā Rōmānīs superātī erant. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum erat proximumque Helvëtiōrum finibus Genāva. Cæsar summā celeritātē ad Genāvam legiōnem dūcit. Helvëtiī lēgātōs ad Cæsarem mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis. Cæsar Helvëtiis iter per prōvinciam nōn dat, sed legiōne aliisque mīlitibus ad montem Iūram mīlia passuum decem novem mūrū in altitudinem pedum sēdecim dūcit, et Helvëtiōs itinere prohibet. Helvëtiī alterā viā (*road*) per Sēquanōs iter facere volēbant (*wished*) sed Sēquanī iter nōn dabant. Ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum lēgātōs mittunt Helvëtiī.

Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimum valēbat auctōritāte et Helvētiīs propter uxōrem amicus erat. Sēquanī Dumnorigis auctoritāte mōtī (*moved*) Helvētiīs per finēs iter dant.



## CHAPTER XXXIII.

### Third Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active.

#### *Ordinal Numerals.*

**186.** Learn the imperfect and future indicative active of *dūcō*.

Observe that the endings of the imperfect are the same as those of the first and second conjugations, while those of the future are different.

Write a table of future endings for the third conjugation, active voice, and commit to memory.

#### **187.**

#### ORDINAL NUMERALS.

1st. <i>prīmus</i>	11th. <i>ūndecimus</i>
2d. <i>secundus</i>	12th. <i>duodecimus</i>
3d. <i>tertius</i>	13th. <i>tertius decimus</i>
4th. <i>quārtus</i>	14th. <i>quārtus decimus</i>
5th. <i>quīntus</i>	15th. <i>quīntus decimus</i>
6th. <i>sextus</i>	16th. <i>sextus decimus</i>
7th. <i>septimus</i>	17th. <i>septimus decimus</i>
8th. <i>octāvus</i>	18th. <i>duodēvicēsīmus</i>
9th. <i>nōnus</i>	19th. <i>ūndēvicēsīmus</i>
10th. <i>decimus</i>	20th. <i>vicēsīmus</i>

21st. vicēsīmus primus <i>or</i> ūnus	60th. sexāgēsīmus
et vicēsīmus	70th. septuāgēsīmus
28th. duodētrīcēsīmus	80th. octōgēsīmus
29th. ūndētrīcēsīmus	90th. nōnāgēsīmus
30th. trīcēsīmus	100th. centēsīmus
40th. quadrāgēsīmus	200th. ducentēsīmus
50th. quīnquāgēsīmus	1000th. millēsīmus

Ordinal numerals are declined like *bonus*.

## 188.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>adventus</b> , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , arrival; approach.	<b>legō</b> , -ere, <b>lēgī</b> , <b>lēctum</b> , gather, read.
<b>Hannibal</b> , -alis, <i>m.</i> , Hannibāl.	<b>scrībō</b> , -ere, <b>scrīpsī</b> , <b>scriptum</b> , write.
<b>Italia</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Italy.	
<b>manipulus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , a manipule.	<b>quārtus</b> , -a, -um, fourth.
<b>certus</b> , -a, -um, certain.	<b>quīntus</b> , -a, -um, fifth.
<b>Gallicus</b> , -a, -um, Gallic, of Gaul.	<b>sextus</b> , -a, -um, sixth.
<b>dūcō</b> , -ere, <b>dūxī</b> , <b>ductum</b> , lead.	<b>decimus</b> , -a, -um, tenth.
	<b>vicēsīmus</b> , -a, -um, twentieth.

## 189.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Puerī sextum dē Bellō Gallicō librum legēbant.  
 2. Uxōrem dē adventū filiārum trium certiōrem<sup>1</sup> facit.  
 3. Vicēsīmus aciēi mīles pilō vulnerātus est. 4. Duābus  
 hōrīs decem mīlia passuum nūntius curret. 5. Ā prō-  
 vinciā in finēs Belgārum vīgintī diēbus exercitum dūcit.  
 6. Quīntō bellī annō urbs ā Rōmānīs expūgnāta est.  
 7. Cohors decima pars legiōnis Rōmānae, manipulus  
 tertia pars cohortis erat. 8. Peditum mīlia sex et equi-  
 tum mīlia quattuor in proeliō pūgnāvērunt. 9. Scribē-  
 tisne, puerī, epistulās ad patrēs? Scribēmus. 10. Hanni-  
 bal māgnū exercitum in Ītaliā dūcit et multis proeliis

<sup>1</sup> *Certiōrem facit*, makes more certain, i.e. informs.

Rōmānōs superat. 11. Vigilia apud Rōmānōs quārta pars noctis erat. 12. Ducentōs quadrāgintā quattuor annōs rēgēs Rōmānōrum rēgnū obtinēbant. 13. In portū erant trecentae octōgintā nāvēs.

II. 1. We shall write many letters from the city to (our) friends. 2. A friend of the Roman people had for many years held the royal power among the Sequanians. 3. How many legions were (there) in our province? 4. (There) were in all in the state of the Æduans three legions and four cohorts. 5. We were reading about the arrival of Hannibal in Gaul. 6. The town was filled with cavalry and foot-soldiers. 7. Through the influence of Orgetorix, the Æduans were carrying on war with the Germans. 8. Our state extends in length two hundred miles, and in breadth one hundred. 9. On the fifth day at sunset he takes the town by storm. 10. On the fourteenth day the general will lead from Italy six cohorts of the second legion.



## CHAPTER XXXIV.

### **Third Conjugation : Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active.**

#### *Personal and Reflexive Pronouns.*

**190.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses of the indicative active of *dūcō*. Compare the endings with those of the same tenses of *amō* and *habēō*.

## 191. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Multōs annōs Hannibal cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbat, gesserat. 2. Quot epistulās ūnō annō scribis, scripsisti? 3. Quattuor librōs dē Bellō Gallicō legēmus, lēgimus. 4. Equōs sexāgintā in castra mittēmus, mīsimus. 5. Centuriō manipulum dūcēbat, dūxerat. 6. Nūntius ūnō diē vīginti mīlia passuum curret, cucurrit. 7. Peditēs pīla celeriter mittent, mīserint. 8. Nautae frūmentō nāvēs complent, complēvērunt. 9. Rēgnum in Sēquanīs a Rōmānōrum amīcō obtinēbitur, obtinēbātur. 10. In prōvinciam cōpiās lēgātus dūcet, dūcēbat, dūxit.

II. 1. Our pupils have read, they will read many good books. 2. I have written to my father, I shall write. 3. Three hundred men were wounded, they had been wounded in the first battle. 4. How many books did you write, how many had you written? 5. The soldier will send many presents to (his) son, he has sent many. 6. I will lead the horse to the general. 7. On the fifth day the general was wounded, on the sixth the camp was stormed. 8. The boys will run, they were running very swiftly. 9. I will send (my) children to Italy, I have sent (them). 10. The ships will be filled, they had been filled with men.

*Personal Pronouns.*

## 192.

## PARADIGMS.

SINGULAR.	FIRST PERSON.	PLURAL.
N. <i>egō, I.</i>		<i>nōs, we.</i>
G. <i>meī, of me.</i>		<i>nostrum or nostrī, of us.</i>
D. <i>mihi (mī), to, for me.</i>		<i>nōbis, to, for us.</i>

## SINGULAR.

Ac. *mē*, *me*.Ab. *mē*, *from, by, with, etc., me*.

## PLURAL.

nōs, *us*.nōbīs, *from, by, with, etc., us*.

## SECOND PERSON.

N., V. *tū*, (*thou*) *you*.G. *tui*, of (*thee*) *you*.D. *tibi*, to, for (*thee*) *you*.Ac. *tē*, (*thee*) *you*.Ab. *tē*, *from, by, with, etc., (thee) you*.vōs, *you*.vestrum or vestri, of *you*.vōbīs, to, for *you*.vōs, *you*.vōbīs, *from, by, with, etc., you*.

## THIRD PERSON.

*Reflexive.*

N. ———

G. *sui*, of *him(self), her(self), it(self)*.D. *sibi*, to, for *him(self), etc.*Ac. *sē, sēsē*, *him(self), etc.*Ab. *sē, sēsē*, *from, by, with, etc., him(self)*.

—————

*sui*, of *them(selves)*.*sibi*, to, for *them(selves)*.*sē, sēsē*, *them(selves)*.*sē, sēsē*, *from, by, with, etc., them(selves)*.

1. The reflexive regularly refers to the subject of the sentence; as, *Iūlia sē culpat*, *Julia blames herself*. The place of the reflexive of the first and second person is supplied by the personal pronouns *ego, tū, nōs, vōs*; as, *Ego mē culpō*, *I blame myself*; *tū tē culpās*, *you blame yourself*.

2. The forms *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used chiefly as partitive genitives. See 135.

3. There are in Latin no special forms for the personal pronouns *he, she, it, and they*. For the substitutes see 208. 1.

4. When used with personal and reflexive pronouns, the preposition *cum* is enclitic (see 4. 7); as, *mēcum, sēcum, vōbiscum*. So also with relative pronouns; as, *quōcum, quācum, quibuscum*.

## 193.

## VOCABULARY.

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cicero.tempestās, -ātis, *f.*, storm, tempest.ego, *I.*tū, *thou.*

sui, of himself, herself, itself.

iam, *adv.*, now, already.

adversus, -a, -um, unfavorable,

adverse; adversae rēs, adversity.

secundus, -a, -um, favorable.

secundae rēs, prosperity.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, drive, do, act.

## 194.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ego tertiā diēi hōrā epistulam scribēbam, tū carmina Homēri legēbās. 2. Iulia sē semper laudat, sed mē semper culpat. 3. Quot annōs habet Cornēlia? Quīnque annōs habet. 4. Lēgerat quattuor dē Bellō Gallicō librōs. 5. Silva sex mīlia passuum in lātitudinem pertinet. 6. Nōmina multōrum poētārum sunt cāra nōbīs. 7. Adversa tempestās in lītus nōs ēgerat. 8. Nūntius dē fugā Hannibalis fuit certus. 9. Multae nāvēs longae propter tempestātem in nostrum portum cucurrerant. 10. In rēbus secundis omnēs amicōs habent. 11. Tibi dabō duōs pulcherrimōs librōs. Quid tū mihi dabis? 12. Paucī nostrōrum<sup>1</sup> impetum equitum sustinuērunt. 13. Ducem vōbīscum mīlia passuum decem mittēmus. 14. Hannibal iam multās Ītalīae cīvitatēs expūgnāverat. 15. Rēs adversae saepe fortium animōs terrent.

II. 1. The garden extends two hundred feet in length and one hundred in breadth. 2. He leads two maniples of the second cohort to the top of the mountain. 3. How many books do you read in a year? 4. You will read with me the first book of the Gallic War. 5. I shall read

---

<sup>1</sup> Our (*men*).



a good book, but you will write a letter to (your) mother. 6. He informs<sup>1</sup> me of the arrival of my father. 7. There was a river between the Romans and the camp of Hannibal. 8. On the fourteenth day we saw a wide river, and on the twentieth a very high mountain. 9. I am the fifth, you are the sixth. 10. Nothing is dearer to me than (my) country. 11. The tempest will drive many ships into the harbor.

## 195.

## READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 10-12.]

Helvētiīs in animō erat per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum (*the Santōnes*) finēs facere. Santonēs proximī erant prōvinciæ Rōmānae. Caesar ex Italiā quīnque legiōnēs in Galliam dūxit. In itinere cum montium incolīs pūgnābat. Caesaris adventū Helvētiī iam per Sēquanōrum finēs in Aeduōrum agrōs cōpiās dūxerant et Aeduōrum agrōs vāstābant. Aeduī et aliī Rōmānōrum amīci ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt. Caesar Aeduōs iuvāre et Helvētiōs superāre voluit (*wished*). Flūmen est Arar (*the Saône*) quod (*which*) per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit (*flows*). Helvētiī trēs iam partēs cōpiārum trāns (*across*) Ararim flūmen dūxerant, quārtam ferē partem nōn trādūxerant (*had led across*). Omnis cīvitātis Helvētiōrum quattuor partēs erant. Caesar in quārtam Helvētiōrum partem impetum facit. Multī occīsī sunt (*were killed*); reliquī fugae sē mandāvērunt (*gave up*).

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 189. I. 2.

## CHAPTER XXXV.

Third Conjugation: Present and Imperfect  
Passive.*Possessive Pronouns.*

**196.** Learn the present and imperfect indicative passive of *dūcō*.

**197.** From the personal pronouns are formed the possessive pronouns.

<b>meus, -a, -um, my.</b>	<b>tuus, -a, -um, thy.</b>
<b>noster, -tra, -trum, our.</b>	<b>vester, -tra, -trum, your.</b>
<b>suus, -a, -um, his, hers, their.</b>	

1. These are adjectives in construction and they are declined as regular adjectives of the first and second declension, except that the vocative singular masculine of *meus* is usually *mī*, sometimes *meus*.

2. *Suus*, like the personal pronoun from which it is formed, is reflexive.

3. Possession is denoted by the possessive pronouns, not by the genitive of the personal pronouns. *Puer suam mātrem amat, the boy loves his mother.*

**198.**

## VOCABULARY.

<b>rīpa, -ae, f., bank.</b>	<b>dividō, -ere, divīsī, divīsūm,</b>
<b>vīcus, -ī, m., village.</b>	<b>divide, separate.</b>
<b>meus, -a, -um, my.</b>	<b>expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,</b>
<b>tuus, -a, -um, thy, your.</b>	<b>wait for, expect.</b>
<b>noster, -tra, -trum, our.</b>	<b>incolō, -ere, -coluī, live in,</b>
<b>vester, -tra, -trum, your.</b>	<b>inhabit.</b>
<b>suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their.</b>	<b>ante (prep. with acc.), before.</b>

## 199.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Militēs novī in cohortēs dīviduntur.<sup>1</sup> 2. Explōrātor dē omnibus rēbus Caesarem cottidiē certiōrem facit. 3. Ante adventum vestrum, amīcī, quīntum dē Bellō Gallicō librum legēbam. 4. Rēbus in adversīs paucī, in secundīs multī hominibus amīcī sunt. 5. Prīmam lūcem in rīpā flūminis exspectābam. 6. Ūnam partem Galliae incolunt Belgae, aliam Galli. 7. Tē et amīcum tuum in vicō exspectābit. 8. Duōs nūntiōs ad Hannibalem iam mīserat. 9. Epistula tua, mī fili,<sup>2</sup> multum mē dēlectāvit. 10. Summam suōrum<sup>3</sup> virtūtem Caesar laudat. 11. Cicerō ad amīcōs multās epistulās scrīpsit. 12. Bellum cum multīs cīvitatibus ab Hannibale gerēbātur. 13. Nāvis nostra in portum tempestāte agēbātur.

II. 1. The Allobroges used to live near the Roman province. 2. Your letter, brother, was very welcome to me. 3. A watch was the fourth part of a night. 4. The messenger informs Orgetorix of the arrival of Cæsar in Gaul. 5. The boy sees himself in the water. 6. The tenth legion was being led through our province. 7. We were reading with pleasure the poems of Virgil. 8. He was writing a letter to his sister before my arrival. 9. Our forces were being quickly led into the territory of the Sequanians. 10. I have few books; you have many. 11. We shall often be reading the fourth, fifth, and sixth hours of the day. 12. Our field is being divided by a wall into two parts.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Are being divided.*

<sup>2</sup> *Vocative.*

<sup>3</sup> The possessive pronouns are used frequently agreeing with an omitted noun. Cf. 194. I. 12.

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

**Third Conjugation : Future, Perfect, and  
Future-Perfect Indicative Passive.**

**200.** Learn the future, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative passive of *dūcō*.

Observe that the last three tenses do not differ in form from the same tenses of the first and second conjugations.

**201. EXERCISES ON FORMS.**

I. 1. *Dividitur, divisum est.* 2. *Scribunt, scribēbunt.*  
3. *Mittitur, mittētur, mittuntur.* 4. *Agitur, agēbātur.*  
5. *Legunt, legent, lēgērunt.* 6. *Urbs in sex partēs dividētur.* 7. *Carmina scribentur.* 8. *Ab amicō epistula missa est.* 9. *Nāvis in litus ācta est.* 10. *In ripā Rhodanī vōs exspectābāmus.* 11. *Liber ab omnibus legētur.* 12. *Milia passuum duo cucurrimus.* 13. *In vicō puerī vīsī sunt.* 14. *Paucīs diēbus in urbem mittentur.* 15. *Tōtum diem in castrīs contentī erāmus.*

II. 1. We shall be separated, we have been separated.  
2. It will be driven, it was being driven. 3. We were standing, we had stood. 4. They will be led, they were being led. 5. We shall be kept, they were kept. 6. They had been separated by a wall. 7. We will wait for your coming. 8. The ship was driven from the shore by the storm. 9. The field will be divided into two parts. 10. The poem has been read by my sister. 11. The troops will be led into Gaul. 12. We shall stand on the bank of the river.

## 202.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum,</b> ( <b>dē + dūcō,</b> lead from,) lead away, withdraw.	<b>pōstulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, de-</b> mand.
<b>discēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum,</b> withdraw.	<b>hīberna, -ōrum, n.,</b> winter quar-
<b>maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūm,</b> remain.	<b>labor, -ōris, m.,</b> labor. [ters.
<b>petō, -ere, -īvī or -ī, -ītum,</b> ask.	<b>muller, -eris, f.,</b> woman.
	<b>regiō, -ōnis, f.,</b> district, region.
	<b>salūs, -ūtis, f.,</b> safety.
	<b>mātūrus, -a, -um,</b> ripe.
	<b>mātūrē, adv.,</b> early.

## 203.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō pācem ā Rōmānīs petiērunt. 2. Apud Rōmānōs diēs in duodecim hōrās, nox in quattuor vigiliās dīvisa erat. 3. Caesar mātūrius quam tempus annī pōstulābat in hīberna exercitum dēdūxit. 4. Ante hiemem exercitus noster in hīberna dēductus erit. 5. Paucōs diēs amīcī meī in urbe manēbunt. 6. Diēs nōbīs ad labōrem datur. 7. Paucī hostium fugā salūtem sibi petiērunt. 8. Lēgātus exercitum in aliam regiōnem dēdūxerat. 9. Vigintī diēbus ante<sup>1</sup> frūmentum in meō agrō nōn fuit mātūrum. 10. Bonus cīvis suā salūte patriam cāriōrem habēbit. 11. Cōpiaē primā lūce ā ripā Rhodanī discēssērunt. 12. Gravissimum labōrem propter liberōs suōs saepe sustinent mulierēs. 13. Liberōs obsidēs ā Gallīs pōstulāvit Ariovistus.

II. 1. Our city is divided into ten wards (*regiō*). 2. Our affairs are dear to us, yours to you. 3. Your prosperity will always delight me. 4. A swift messenger had been sent by the shortest route to the winter quarters of Labienus. 5. Storms kept us in the village

<sup>1</sup> Before by twenty days; twenty days ago. Ante is an adverb here.

many days. 6. My son often asks me for money.<sup>1</sup>  
 7. Did Germans use to live on the island of Britain?  
 8. I had already waited for you two hours. 9. We remained in port on account of the violence of the storm.  
 10. The ship was driven swiftly through the water.  
 11. You were friendly to us in adversity. 12. The young man had withdrawn from the army on account of a wound.

## 204.

## READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 13-15.]

Ūnam partem Helvētiōrum Caesar iam superāverat. Cōpiās suās celeriter trāns (*across*) Ararim dūxit contrā (*against*) aliās trēs partēs. Helvētiī ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt. Prīnceps lēgātōrum, Divicō, cum Caesare ēgit (*treated*, i.e. *talked*): “Pācem petimus ā tē. Sī (*if*) pācem faciēs (*will make*), ibimus (*will go*) in eam (*that*) partem atque ibi (*there*) erimus ubi (*where*) nōs cōstitueris (*settle*, fut. perf. of *cōstituō*); sīn (*but if*) bellum nobiscum gerēs, tē superābimus, et locus ubi (*where*) sumus ex calamitāte (*the misfortune*) populī Rōmānī nōmen habēbit.” Caesar respondit (*replied*): “Sī (*if*) obsidēs mihi dabitis et sī Aeduīs et Allobrogibus satisfaciētis (*give satisfaction*), pāx erit.” Divicō respondit, “Helvētiī obsidēs nōn dabunt,” et discēssit. Posterō diē Helvētiī castra movent. Caesaris equitēs cum Helvētiīs pūgnant et superantur. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat et hostēs ā populātiōnibus (*devastations*) prohibēbat. Diēs quīndecim iter fēcērunt (perf. of *faciō*).

<sup>1</sup> For the case of the thing asked for, and the person from whom it is asked with *petere*, see I. 1, above.

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

## Demonstrative Pronouns.

205.

## PARADIGMS.

			SINGULAR.		
hic, <i>this</i> .				ille, <i>that</i> .	
hic	haec	hōc	ille	illa	illud
hūius	hūius	hūius	illius	illius	illius
huic	huic	huic	illi	illi	illī
hunc	hanc	hōc	illum	illam	illud
hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō
PLURAL.					
hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
his	his	his	illis	illis	illis
hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
his	his	his	illis	illis	illis

1. **Hic** refers to that which is near the speaker and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person: *hic puer, this boy*.

2. **Iste**, *that (of yours)*, is declined like *ille*. It is applied to that which is near or has some connection with the person addressed, and so is called the *demonstrative of the second person*: *iste puer, that boy of yours*.

3. **Ille** is applied to what is more remote, and so is called the *demonstrative of the third person*: *ille puer, that boy*.

4. When **hic** and **ille** are contrasted, **hic** usually means *the latter*, and **ille** *the former*.

**Ille** agreeing with a noun frequently means *well-known*.

## 206.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>Aeduī, -ōrum, m.,</b> the Aeduans.	<b>ille, illa, illud,</b> that.
<b>initium, -ī, n.,</b> beginning.	<b>iste, ista, istud,</b> that (of yours).
<b>nēmō, -inis, m.,</b> nobody.	<b>clārus, -a, -um,</b> eminent.
<b>ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.,</b> speech, oration.	<b>militāris, -e,</b> military.
<b>signum, -ī, n.,</b> standard, sign.	<b>dicō, -ere, dīxī, dictum,</b> say.
<b>hic, haec, hōc,</b> this.	<b>cūr, adv.,</b> why?

## 207.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ego et amīcī meī hōc vīcō dēlectāmur. 2. Hic paucōs diēs in urbe manēbit, ille in litus properābit. 3. Iste liber est pulcherrimus. 4. Vergilius et Caesar clārī Rōmānī fuērunt; ille poēta, hic perītus rei<sup>1</sup> militāris fuit. 5. Aquilae erant signa militāria legiōnum Rōmānārum. 6. Hannibal cum cōpiīs suis ex illā regiōne iam discēsserat. 7. Nēmō libentius tē videt quam ego. 8. Initiō ōrātiōnis multa dē virtūte cīvium nostrōrum Cicerō dixit. 9. Agricola ante lūcem initium labōris saepe facit. 10. Cūr lēgātus mātūrius<sup>2</sup> in hīberna cōpiās suās dēdūxit? 11. Nēmō omnium cīvium nostrōrum clārior est illō virō.

II. 1. These children asked their father for a new book. 2. This boy is two years younger than that (one). 3. The winter quarters of our two legions were separated by a marsh. 4. We were waiting for you in the village all day. 5. Men used to live in villages for the sake of safety. 6. The Helvetians demanded the noblest of the Aeduans as hostages. 7. The bank of the river was covered (filled) with large trees. 8. Why had the

<sup>1</sup> Perītus and many other adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning.

<sup>2</sup> See 127. 3.



forces of Labienus been led away to their winter quarters unusually<sup>1</sup> early that year? 9. The grain in your fields will be ripe in a few days. 10. We saw the eagle of the tenth legion among the military standards. 11. Those boys of yours say many things about themselves. 12. These women do not ask the enemy for peace.



## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Demonstrative Pronouns. — *Continued.*

## 208.

## PARADIGMS.

*is, this, that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>N. is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī (lī)</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>	
<i>G. ēlus</i>	<i>ēlus</i>	<i>ēlus</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	
<i>D. eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs (līs)</i>	<i>eīs (līs)</i>	<i>eīs (līs)</i>	
<i>Ac. eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>	
<i>Ab. eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs (līs)</i>	<i>eīs (līs)</i>	<i>eīs (līs)</i>	

*idem, same.*

<i>N. idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	{ <i>eidem</i> <i>(līdem)</i> <i>eaedem</i> <i>eadem</i>			
<i>G. ēlusdem</i>	<i>ēlusdem</i>	<i>ēlusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	
<i>D. eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eīsdem (līsdem)</i>			
<i>Ac. eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	
<i>Ab. eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eīsdem (līsdem)</i>			

<sup>1</sup> Compare I. 10, above.

ipse, self.					
SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G. ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D. ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Ac. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

1. *Is* is sometimes used as the personal pronoun of the third person, and then means *he, she, it*.

2. *Ip̄se*, the intensive pronoun, is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun expressed or understood with which it agrees as an adjective. The reflexive pronoun *sē*, *self*, is always used substantively. The following sentences will illustrate the use of the two.

1. *Miles sē laudat*, the soldier praises himself.
2. *Miles ip̄se laudātus est*, the soldier himself was praised.
3. *Ip̄se manēbō*, I myself will remain.
4. *Mulier epistolam ip̄sam legit*, the woman reads the letter itself, or, the very letter.

## 209.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>committō, -ere, -misi, -missum,</b> ( <i>con and mittō</i> ), entrust;	<b>idem, eadem, idem,</b> same.
<b>committere proelium,</b> engage in battle.	<b>ip̄se, ip̄sa, ip̄sum,</b> self.
<b>dēfendō, -ere, -fendi, -fensum,</b> protect, defend.	<b>is, ea, id,</b> that, this.
<b>domus, -ūs, f.,</b> house, home.	<b>barbarus, -i, m.,</b> barbarian.
	<b>diū, adv.,</b> long, a long time.
	<b>tam, adv.,</b> so.

## 210.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Hostēs ad Caesarem lēgātōs misērunt, pācemque ab eō petunt.* 2. *Centuriō salūtem suam explōrātōribus*

Gallōrum commisit. 3. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent, idem Caesar facit. 4. Cūr Cicerō ipse suās orātiōnēs tam saepe laudāvit? 5. Titum et frātre m eius obsidēs dux Helvētiōrum pōstulāverat. 6. Nōne tū ipse et frāter tuus in urbe mēcum paucōs diēs manēbitis? 7. Caesar et Labiēnus in eundem locum properāverant et unō tempore proelium cum Belgis commiserunt. 8. Lēgātus ipse peritissimus rei militāris habitus est. 9. Rōmānī ab iniuriā barbarōrum patriam diū dēfendērunt. 10. Hī barbarī ab impetū hostium domōs suās ācritēr dēfendent. 11. Mihi mea domus, tibi tua est cāra. 12. Initium hūius librī est facilius quam extrēma pars.

II. 1. The Belgians and the Helvetians did not live in the same part of Gaul. 2. That speech of yours was pleasing to many citizens. 3. The army will be led away from the winter quarters in a few days. 4. We saw that man in the city. 5. Cicero had great influence in those regions. 6. No one of this legion withdrew from the standards. 7. Why do you remain so long in this city? 8. These boys will assist their father in his daily toil. 9. The general himself and many of his men (soldiers) were wounded. 10. We had expected the ambassador and his son a long time. 11. Many illustrious men have lived in this city. 12. Why do you say these things to me?

## 211.

## READING LESSON.

[CAESAR, *Gallie War*, I. 16, 17.]

Caesaris cōpiae frūmentum nōn habēbant. Aeduī id nōn dabant, nam (*for*) propter tempus annī frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant. Aeduī cottidiē dicēbant "frūmentum dabimus," sed nōn dabant. Propter hōc irātus

(*being angry*) Caesar prīncipēs eōrum convocāvit et graviter eōs accūsāvit. Liscus (*a man's name*), prīnceps Aeduōrum Caesarī dixit: "Cīviūm Aeduōrum nōnnūlli (*some*) auctōritāte plūs valent quam ipsī prīncipēs. Hī malā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrent (*deter*) nē (*that not*) frūmentum dent (*give*, subjunctive of *dō*).<sup>1</sup> Hī dicunt: 'sī (*if*) Rōmānī Helvētiōs superāverint, Aeduīs<sup>2</sup> et omnibus Gallīs<sup>2</sup> libertātem ēripiēt (*will take away*).' Ab eīsdem vestra cōnsilia (*plans*) hostibus ēnūntiantur (*are reported*). Hās rēs māgnō cum periculō (*danger*) tibi ēnūntiō, et ob (*on account of, for*) eam causam diū tacuī (*kept silent*)."



## CHAPTER XXXIX.

## Fourth Conjugation: Present Indicative Active.

*Relative Pronoun.*

**212.** Learn the present indicative active of *audiō* (p. 214).

**213.**

## PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>quī, who, which.</i>					
N. <i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
G. <i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
D. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
Ac. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
Ab. <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

<sup>1</sup> *nō . . . dent, that they give not, i.e. from giving.*

<sup>2</sup> Dative, but translate *from*.

**214. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.**

1. **Ego quī haec scripsī homō sum, *I who wrote this am a man.***
2. **Urbs quam vidēs māgna est, *the city which you see is large.***
3. **Puerī quōs vidētis discipulī mei sunt, *the boys whom you see are my pupils.***

Observe that the relative has the same gender, number, and person as the word (called the antecedent) to which it refers, but that its case is determined by its relation to the other words of the clause in which it stands. *Quī* in the first sentence, while it has no separate form to show its person, is nevertheless of the first person, and so the verb which agrees with it is in the first person.

**215. RULE.** — *A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.*

**216. VOCABULARY.**

<b>vōx, vōcis, f., voice.</b>	<b>mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, fortify.</b>
<b>reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest of.</b>	<b>veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum, come.</b>
<b>audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, hear.</b>	<b>quī, quae, quod, who, which.</b>
<b>hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, spend the winter.</b>	<b>quam, adv., as; tam . . . quam, so . . . as.</b>

**217. EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Nōn is bonus est quī sē ipse laudat, sed is quem optimī hominēs laudant. 2. Dux, quī hiemāverat in Italiā, primā aestāte in Britanniam vēnit. 3. Locum ubi hiemābit exercitus noster mūnimus. 4. Libenter vōcem mei amīcī Mārcī semper audiō. 5. Helvētīi eō tempore quō Caesar in Galliam vēnit ad flūmen Rhēnum incolēbant.

6. Nēmō rei militāris perītior quam Hannibal fuit. 7. Domus amīcōrum quibuscum<sup>1</sup> hiemō multīs pictūrīs ornātur. 8. Ea pars Galliae quam Belgae obtinent ā finibus Gallōrum ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī pertinet. 9. Quī ā multīs timētur, ipse multōs timēbit. 10. Nōne audīs ea quae dīcō? 11. Initium itineris nōn est tam difficile quam reliqua pars.

II. 1. The same things are not easy for all men. 2. Many barbarians used to live in this region where we are. 3. I shall read with pleasure the orations which you gave me. 4. Those soldiers of yours always engage in battle bravely. 5. Cicero in the oration which I am reading, praises himself. 6. These barbarians are very skilful in the art of war. 7. The Roman legions used to defend their standards with the utmost valor. 8. The beginning of the book which I gave you is easy. 9. Dumnorix and his cavalry begin<sup>2</sup> the battle. 10. Shall you remain long in Greece? 11. The winter quarters which the legion is fortifying are in the territory of the Sequanians.

---

<sup>1</sup> See 192. 4, at the end.

<sup>2</sup> *Make a beginning of.*

## CHAPTER XL.

**Fourth Conjugation : Imperfect, Future, Perfect,  
Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect  
Indicative Active.**

*Interrogative Pronoun.*

**218.** Learn the imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect of the indicative active of *audiō*.

Compare the endings of each tense with the endings of the same tense of *dūcō*.

In what tenses is there a difference? In what does the difference consist?

**219. EXERCISES ON FORMS.**

I. 1. *Audit, audiēbat, audiet.* 2. *Vēnit, vēnerat, vēnerit.* 3. *Audīvi, audīveram, audīverō.* 4. *Mūnit, mūniet, mūnīvit.* 5. *Barbarus in Ītaliā vēnit.* 6. *Vōcemne audīs?* 7. *Lēgātus mūrō hīberna mūniet.* 8. *Eadem audīverunt.* 9. *Quō diē veniētis?* 10. *Quid dīcis, dicēs, dixistī?*

II. 1. You hear, you were hearing. 2. They will fortify, they have fortified. 3. We were coming, we had come. 4. He will protect, he has protected. 5. Whose voice do you hear? 6. The soldiers will fortify this place. 7. They will come to the city. 8. Whose speech did they hear? 9. We will defend our home. 10. They are coming from the winter quarters.

*Interrogative Pronoun.***220.****PARADIGM.****quis, who ? which ? what ?**

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i> quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i> cūlus	cūlus	cūlus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>D.</i> cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ac.</i> quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Ab.</i> quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

When the interrogative is used as an adjective, it usually has the same form as the relative.

**221.****VOCABULARY.**

**genus, -eris, *n.***, kind, sort.  
**mercātor, -ōris, *m.***, merchant.  
**numerus, -ī, *m.***, number.  
**senātus, -ūs, *m.***, senate.  
**quis, quae, quid**, who, what.  
**pūblicus, -a, -um**, public.

**appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, call.  
**considō, -ere, -sēdi, -sēssum**,  
 take a position, encamp.  
**dīmittō, -ere, -mīsi, -misum**,  
 (**dis and mittō**), send away,  
 dismiss.

**222.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Mille civēs vōcem cōsulis audiēbant. 2. Quid ex tuō frātre dē adventū Germānōrum audivistī? 3. In Graeciā et in Italiā urbēs multae et nōbilēs sunt. 4. Caesar tertiae legiōnī salūtem suam commisit. 5. Quibus ex regiōnibus eī mercātōrēs vērunt? 6. Quae arborum genera in pūblicis hortis vīdistī? 7. Nūntiī ā senātū in multās regiōnēs dīmissi sunt. 8. Hominēs quī Belgae appellābantur, ūnam Galliae partem incolēbant. 9. Cum tribus legiōnibus et māgnō equitum numerō proelium commisit. 10. Ubi hostium cōpiae consēdērunt? 11. Cas-



ticus, cuius pater amicus populi Rōmāni fuerat, rēgnum in suā civitatē occupābat. 12. Ego in Graeciā reliquam hiemis partem manēbō.

II. 1. Who of you will read Cicero's orations? 2. The same storm which kept us in port drove many ships upon the shore. 3. We will come into the city by the shortest route. 4. Marcus will be glad to hear the voice of his friend. 5. That little girl whose voice you hear is very unhappy. 6. In what district do they live? 7. What towns have the enemy fortified? 8. The Gauls were called barbarians by the Romans. 9. The home of that merchant is on the bank of the Rhine. 10. The province had for a long time been protected by the tenth legion. 11. Cæsar himself wrote a letter to Cicero.

## 223.

## READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, I. 18.]

Hanc orationem de Dumnorige, Divitiaci fratre, Liscus dixerat. Caesar celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet (*retains*). Querit (*he asks*) ex eo solo ea quae in concilio dixerat. Eadem ab aliis querit. Vera erant. Dumnorix ipse summā erat audaciā (*boldness*), magnā apud plebem (*the common people*) auctoritātē, Rōmānis nōn amicus. Multos annos omnia Aeduorum vectigalia redempta (*bought up*) habebat. Magnum numerum equitum semper circum (*about, around*) se habebat et apud alias civitates magnam auctoritatem habebat. Mater eius uxor erat hominis in Biturigibus (*the Bituriges, a Gallic tribe*) nobilissimī; ipse ex Helvetiis uxorem habebat. Ob (*on account of*) eam rem Helvetiis amicus erat.

In proeliō equestri (cavalry, adj.) quod paucīs diēbus ante factum erat (*had been made, i.e. fought*) initium fugae ā Dumnorige et suis equitibus factum erat. Eōrum fugā reliquī equitēs territī erant.



## CHAPTER XLI.

### Fourth Conjugation : Passive Voice.

#### *Indefinite Pronouns.*

**224.** Learn the indicative passive of *audiō*. Compare the endings of each tense with the endings of the same tense of *dūcō*, and observe the differences.

#### **225. EXERCISES ON FORMS.**

I. 1. Vōx cōsulis in senātū audīta est, audiētur, audiēbātur. 2. Cūius vōx audītur, audīta erat, audīta erit? 3. Quā ex urbe venīs, veniēbās, vēnerās? 4. Illud oppidum mūnītur, mūniētur, mūnītum est. 5. Cicerōnis ōrātiōnem audiēmus, audīvimus, audīverāmus. 6. Vōcēs multōrum audītae sunt, audiēbantur, audientur. 7. Cūr veniunt, veniēbant, vēnērunt? 8. Eadem in senātū dicta sunt.

II. 1. In what city do we live, shall we live, have we lived? 2. We have come to this city, shall come, were coming. 3. The winter quarters will be fortified, were being fortified, have been fortified. 4. What did you

hear, whom did you hear? 5. What was heard, who was heard? 6. What place is being fortified, has been fortified? 7. In what place will the army spend the winter? 8. The shouts of the children will be heard.

## 226. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The following are the more important indefinite pronouns:—

- |                |                          |                     |  |
|----------------|--------------------------|---------------------|--|
| 1. Substantive | <b>aliquis, aliquae</b>  | <b>aliquid,</b>     | } <i>somebody, some one, something.</i>  |
|                | ( <b>aliqua</b> ),       |                     |  |
|                | <b>quis, quae</b>        | <b>quid,</b>        |  |
|                | ( <b>qua</b> ),          |                     |  |
| Adjective      | <b>aliqui, aliqua</b>    | ( <b>aliquae</b> ), | } <i>some, any.</i>                      |
|                | <b>qui, qua</b>          | ( <b>quae</b> ),    |  |
|                |                          | <b>quod,</b>        |  |
| 2.             | <b>quisquam, —</b>       | <b>quidquam</b>     | (no plural), <i>any one.</i>             |
| 3.             | <b>quidam, quaedam,</b>  | <b>quiddam</b>      | ( <b>quoddam</b> ), <i>a, a certain.</i> |
| 4.             | <b>quisque, quaeque,</b> | <b>quidque</b>      | ( <b>quodque</b> ), <i>each, every.</i>  |
| 5.             | <b>ūllus, ūlla,</b>      | <b>ūllum,</b>       | <i>any.</i>                              |

These pronouns, except *ūllus*, are declined like the interrogative or the relative. Where there are two forms, the one like the interrogative is used as a noun, the one like the relative as an adjective, but this distinction is not always observed, except in the neuter. The neuter plural of *aliqui* is generally *aliqua*, of *qui* indefinite *quae* or *qua*. In the declension of *quidam*, *m* becomes *n* before *d*, as, *quendam, quōdrundam*.

The indefinite *quis* and *qui* are used chiefly after *si*, *nisi*, *nō*, and *num*, and will be introduced later in connection with these particles.

*Quisquam* is used chiefly in negative sentences, and in sentences (chiefly interrogative) implying a negative.

## 227.

## VOCABULARY.

**captivus**, -i, *m.*, captive.

**colloquium**, -i, *n.*, conference.

**aliquis**, -quae (-qua), -quid,  
somebody, something.

**quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam**,  
a certain.

**quis**, **qua** (quae), **quid**, some-  
body, something.

**quisque**, **quaque**, **quidque**,  
every one.

**quisquam**, . . . **quidquam**,  
somebody, something.

**dēligō**, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctum  
(**dē** and **legō**), pick from, se-  
lect.

**reperiō**, -īre, **repperī**, **reper-**  
**tum**, find out.

**neque**, *conj.*, and not.

**neque** . . . **neque**, neither  
. . . nor.

## 228.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Eadem dē Dumnorige quisque apud mē dixit.  
2. Quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis nocte ad Cae-  
sarem vēnit. 3. Locum aliquem colloquiō idōneum dēli-  
gent. 4. Primum quisque itineris locum petēbat. 5. Ex  
captivō quōdam proximum iter in oppidum repertum est.  
6. Cūr quisquam illōs barbarōs timet? 7. Quāque hiemē  
amicī quidam patris mei in urbem veniēbant. 8. Qui  
vestrum rosās in hortīs publicīs vīderunt? 9. Vōx ma-  
gistrī ā quōque nostrum audita est. 10. Locus quem  
dux dēlēgit paucīs diēbus mūniētur. 11. In prōvinciam  
mīsit equitēs, sed reliquum exercitum in hiberna dūxit.  
12. Multa arborum genera sunt in eā silvā.

II. 1. Some friends of mine are spending the win-  
ter in Greece and Italy. 2. In the winter we live in a  
large and celebrated city. 3. He will encamp every night  
four miles from the enemy. 4. I saw certain boys in  
the city last night. 5. The number of inhabitants of this  
city is very large. 6. Cæsar's daughter was called Julia.  
7. He had not heard about the arrival of Ariovistus, nor

was anything found out from the captives. 8. The voice of my mother was heard at dawn. 9. Many merchants used to come into Gaul every summer. 10. We dismissed every pupil before night on account of the weather. 11. Certain captives were led into the senate.



## CHAPTER XLII.

### **Infinitives of Sum ; Infinitives of First and Second Conjugations.**

*Indirect Discourse (Ōrātiō Obliqua) ; Subject of the Infinitive.*

**229.** Learn the infinitives of **sum** (p. 222), and the infinitives, both active and passive, of **amō** and **habēō**.

The present infinitive has already been introduced in sentences in which it is used in Latin just as in English, and required no explanation ; as, —

**Helvētīī parātī erant obsidēs dare,**  
**Properat in altiōrem locum castra movēre.**

**230.** For a different use of the infinitive, examine the following sentences : —

**DIRECT.** **Puer parat,** *the boy is preparing.*

**INDIRECT.** **Dicō puerum parāre,** *I say that the boy is preparing.*

**DIRECT.** **Locus parātus est,** *the place has been prepared.*

INDIRECT. **Putō locum parātum esse**, *I think that the place has been prepared.*

DIRECT. **Puer parābit**, *the boy will (is going to) prepare.*

INDIRECT. **Videō puerum parātūrum esse**, *I see that the boy will (is going to) prepare.*

Observe that the sentences marked INDIRECT contain the same statements as the corresponding sentences marked DIRECT, but that in the sentences marked INDIRECT the statements are attributed to some speaker or observer. A statement thus attributed to any one, and not directly quoted, is called an *Indirect statement*, or a statement in *Indirect Discourse*.

In English, statements in Indirect Discourse are introduced by the conjunction *that* (which may sometimes be omitted), the subject is in the Nominative (Subjective) case, and the verb in the Indicative mood. In Latin, statements in Indirect Discourse are not introduced by a conjunction, the subject is in the Accusative case, and the verb in the Infinitive.

**231. RULE.** — *The subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative.*

**232. RULE.** — *Statements after verbs (and other expressions) of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving are expressed by the Infinitive with Subject-Accusative.*

### 233. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

#### PRESENT.

<b>dicit</b>	} <b>puerum parāre,</b>	{	<i>he says that the boy is preparing.</i>
<b>dicet</b>			<i>he will say that the boy is preparing.</i>
<b>dixit</b>			<i>he said that the boy was preparing.</i>
<b>dicit</b>	} <b>locum parāri,</b>	{	<i>he says that the place is being prepared.</i>
<b>dicet</b>			<i>he will say that the place is being prepared.</i>
<b>dixit</b>			<i>he said that the place was being prepared.</i>

## PERFECT.

dicīt	{	puerum parā- visse,	{	he says that the boy has prepared.
dicet				he will say that the boy has prepared.
dixit				he said that the boy had prepared.
dicīt	{	locum parātum esse,	{	he says that the place has been prepared.
dicet				he will say that the place has been pre- pared.
dixit				he said that the place had been prepared.

## FUTURE.

dicīt	{	puerum parātū rum esse,	{	he says that the boy will prepare.
dicet				he will say that the boy will prepare.
dixit				he said that the boy would (was going to) prepare.
dicīt	{	locum parātum iri, <sup>1</sup>	{	he says that the place will be prepared.
dicet				he will say that the place will be prepared.
dixit				he said that the place would (was going to) be prepared.

Observe that in the first six sentences the preparing takes place at the same time as the saying, in the second six at a time before (past to) the saying, in the third six at a time after (future to) the saying.

**234. RULE.** — *In Indirect Discourse the Present Infinitive is used to represent an action as going on; the Perfect, as completed; the Future, as in the future relatively to the time denoted by the verb of saying.*

## 235.

## VOCABULARY.

Athēnae, -ārum, <i>f.</i> , Athens.	putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think.
Rōma, -ae, <i>f.</i> , Rome.	respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsum,
cōfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,	reply.
assert, encourage.	sciō, scīre, scīvī, scitum, know.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, report.	

<sup>1</sup> A more usual form for the future passive infinitive is *fore* (a future infinitive of *sum*) *ut* and the subjunctive. See 387.

## 236.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Impetūs hostium sustinēre nōn est facile. 2. Imperātor scit milites domōs nostrās occupāre. 3. Omnēs sciunt Rōmam et Athēnās fuisse nōbilissimās urbēs. 4. Dumnorīx neque in colloquium veniet neque exercitum dīmittet. 5. Casticus cōfirmat sē prōvinciam occupātūrum esse. 6. Captivī putāvērunt exercitūs adventū incolās territōs esse. 7. Dicit aliquis portum nāvibus longīs complētum iri. 8. Nūtiābātur exercitum locō<sup>1</sup> proeliō idōneō cōnsēdisse. 9. Repperit principēs Aeduōrum in Britanniam properāvisse. 10. Cicerō respondit sē posterō diē senātum convocātūrum esse. 11. Hortus pūblicus mulieribus ac liberis complētus est.

II. 1. Who says that the route through the province is easy? 2. The general has already selected a certain man as his lieutenant. 3. Does not everyone know that our slaves have been set free? 4. The merchant reported that the Gauls were men of great stature. 5. My mother knows that neither you nor I are strong. 6. The farmer ascertained that a large number of his horses were standing in the water. 7. Who says that boys like to toil? 8. My daughter says in her letter that she will be in the city in a few days. 9. I did not know that Cæsar had called Divitiacus to a conference. 10. Marcus is not in the garden, nor has anyone of us seen him.

## 237.

## READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallic War*, Book I. 19-21.]

Caesar Divitiacum, Dumnorīgis frātre, quī populī Rōmānī amīcus erat, ad sē vocāvit, et dē Dumnorīge multa

<sup>1</sup> The preposition *in* is frequently omitted with *locō*.



dixit. Petiuit ut (*that*) sine (*without*, takes the abl.) eius offēsiōne (*offence*) animi Dumnorigem pūnīret (*might punish*). Divitiacus ā Caesare petiuit nē (*that . . . not*) Dumnorigem pūnīret. Caesar Dumnorigem ad sē vocat. Dicit sē ei vitam (*life*) dare; tamen (*nevertheless*) cūstōdēs ei pōnit (*places*). Eōdem diē Caesarī ab explōrātōribus nūntiātur hostēs sub (*under, at the foot of*) monte cōnsēdisse (perfect infinitive of *cōnsidō*) mīlia passuum ab ipsius castris octō. Iter in montem facile esse nūntiātur. Tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus et eis ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant (*knew*) montem āscendere (*to ascend*) iubet (*orders*). Ipse quārtā vigiliā, eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant (*had gone*) ad eōs contendit (*hastens*). Pūblius Cōnsidius cum explōrātōribus praemittitur (*is sent ahead*).



## CHAPTER XLIII.

### Infinitives of Third and Fourth Conjugations.

#### *Expressions of Place.*

**238.** Learn the infinitives, active and passive, of *dūcō* and *audiō*.

Notice the stems and endings.

Give the infinitives, active and passive, of *legō*, *scribō*, *petō*, *mūniō*, *reperiō*, *sciō*.

## 239. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

*Expressions of Place.*

1. **Militēs in oppidō sunt**, *the soldiers are in the town.*
2. **Militēs ad montem vēnērunt**, *the soldiers came to the mountain.*
3. **Militēs ē prōvinciā vēnērunt**, *the soldiers came from the province.*
4. **Militēs Rōmae sunt**, *the soldiers are at Rome.*
5. **Militēs Athēnīs sunt**, *the soldiers are at Athens.*
6. **Militēs Rōmam vēnērunt**, *the soldiers came to Rome.*
7. **Militēs Rōmā vēnērunt**, *the soldiers came from Rome.*

Notice that, in 1, the place *where* (or *in which*) is expressed by a preposition with the ablative case; in 2, the place *whither* (or *to which*) by a preposition with the accusative; and in 3, the place *whence* (or *from which*) by a preposition with the ablative.

Notice that with names of cities (4-7) no preposition is used, and that place *where* is expressed by the Locative case.

In the singular of the first and second declensions the locative case is like the genitive. Elsewhere it is like the ablative. **Domus** has a locative **domī**, *at home*, and **rūs** has **rūrī**, *in the country*.

240. RULE. — *With names of cities and towns: —*

- I. *Place where is expressed by the locative.*
- II. *Place whither by the accusative without a preposition.*
- III. *Place whence by the ablative without a preposition.*

**Domus**, *home*, and **rūs**, *country*, in expressions of place are used like names of cities.

## 241.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>collis</b> , -is, <i>m.</i> ( <i>decl. like ignis</i> ), hill.	<b>conveniō</b> , -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, ( <i>con and veniō</i> ) come to- gether, assemble.
<b>Corinthus</b> , -ī, <i>f.</i> , Corinth.	<b>ēdūcō</b> , -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, ( <i>ē</i> <i>and dūcō</i> ), lead out or away.
<b>Massilia</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Massilia.	<b>impediō</b> , -īre, -īvī, -itum, ( <i>in-</i> <i>and pēs</i> ), hinder, impede.
<b>occidō</b> , -ere, -cīdī, -cisum, kill.	
<b>pōnō</b> , -ere, posuī, positum, place, pitch (of a camp).	

## 242.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Explōrātōrēs nūtiāvērunt castra in colle pōnī.  
 2. Nūtiat aliquis multōs cīvēs Athēnīs occīsōs esse.  
 3. Dicit quīdam nostrās cōpiās omnēs Corinthum conven-  
 tārās esse. 4. Dicēbāsne tuum frātrem Massiliā vēnisse?  
 5. Imperātor scīvit mulierem quamque mittī ex oppidō.  
 6. Ex explōrātōribus repperī Hannibalem ex castrīs  
 exercitum suum ēdūxisse. 7. Nūtiātur Caesarem in  
 rīpā Rhodanī castra posuisse. 8. Senātus nōn putābat  
 Caesarem Rōmam ventūrum esse. 9. Ex captīvīs reper-  
 tum est ūnum ē filiīs Ariovistī occīsum esse. 10. Lēgā-  
 tus respondit iter impetū equitum hostium impeditum  
 esse.

II. 1. He said that neither the farmer nor his son  
 had come home. 2. He had dwelt at Rome many years.  
 3. We thought that you would come to Rome with your  
 mother. 4. It was easy to fortify the hill on which the  
 camp had been pitched. 5. She said that she had writ-  
 ten a letter to a friend in Athens. 6. Divitiacus asserted  
 that he had always been a friend to the Romans. 7. We  
 found out that the captives had been led away to a forti-  
 fied place. 8. Ariovistus replied to the ambassadors that  
 he would neither come to a conference nor withdraw from

Gaul. 9. The general selected from his troops a certain young man as guide. 10. We knew that you had lived a long time at Massilia.



## CHAPTER XLIV.

### Verbs in *-io* of the Third Conjugation.

**243.** Learn the indicative and infinitive moods, active and passive, of *capiō* (p. 217).

Of which conjugation is *capiō*? Why?

Compare each tense with the same tense of *dūcō* and note the differences in formation, if there are any.

Like *capiō*, conjugate all the verbs in *-iō* in **244**.

### 244.

#### VOCABULARY.

<i>medius</i> , -a, -um, middle of.	<i>iaciō</i> , -ere, <i>fēcī</i> , <i>iactum</i> , throw.
<i>capiō</i> , -ere, <i>cēpī</i> , <i>captum</i> , take, capture.	<i>recipiō</i> , -ere, - <i>cēpī</i> , - <i>ceptum</i> , take back; <i>sē recipere</i> , re- treat.
<i>faciō</i> , -ere, <i>fēcī</i> , <i>factum</i> , make.	<i>interficiō</i> , -ere, - <i>fēcī</i> , - <i>fectum</i> , slay.
<i>fugiō</i> , -ere, <i>fūgī</i> , <i>fugitum</i> , flee.	<i>statim</i> , <i>adv.</i> , immediately.
<i>instruō</i> , -ere, - <i>strūxī</i> , - <i>strūc-</i> <i>tum</i> , draw up.	

### 245.

#### EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Capiunt*, *capiminī*, *capiēbāmur*. 2. *Iacis*, *iaciēs*, *iaciēbās*. 3. *Iacitur*, *iaciētur*, *iaciēbātur*. 4. *Fugiēmus* *Corinthō*. 5. *Fugiēbāmus* *ab urbe*. 6. *Fugiēbant* *Massiliā*. 7. *Parātī* *erant iter facere*. 8. *In collem sē* *recipient*. 9. *Multi dē nostrīs captī sunt*. 10. *Putat omnēs interfectōs esse*.

II. 1. We are throwing, we shall throw. 2. We shall be taken, they have been taken. 3. We shall make a journey to Rome. 4. They were fleeing to the camp. 5. They throw stones from the wall. 6. Many were being slain at Rome. 7. He reports that the town has been taken. 8. The old men will remain at home. 9. They were marching from home. 10. Stones were thrown by the boys.

**246.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Militēs magnā caede oppidum cēperunt. 2. Hostēs in omnēs partēs fugiēbant. 3. Duae filiae fuērunt Ariovistō; hārum altera occīsa est, altera capta est. 4. Statim nūntiat militēs ad montem sē recipere. 5. Nostri pila iaciēbant et in castra sē recipiēbant. 6. Caesar respondet Labiēnum cōpiās ē castrīs ēducere et in mediō<sup>1</sup> colle aciem instrūctūrum esse. 7. Poētae<sup>2</sup> erat in animō Rōmā iter facere Athēnās. 8. Urbs capta est et multī incolae interfectī sunt. 9. Nūntiat castra apud Genāvam posita esse. 10. Quot hominēs Massiliae occīsi sunt? 11. Pater tuus, quī in urbe est, tē domum missum esse nōn scit.

II. 1. He knows that you were often in Corinth. 2. The scouts assembled at dawn, and immediately departed from the camp. 3. Do you think that the enemy will retire to a fortified place? 4. They reported that a line of battle had been drawn up on the middle of the hill. 5. He told the citizens that very many captives were taken in that battle. 6. The general asserted that he would at once take Corinth. 7. I was at home neither

---

<sup>1</sup> On the middle of, i.e. half-way up.

<sup>2</sup> See 49.

last night nor the night before. 8. The boys, who threw the stones, have fled. 9. The troops will quickly retire to the nearest hill. 10. The messenger said that he had been hindered at the river.

## 247.

## READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 22-23.]

Primā luce summus (*highest*, i.e. *the top of*) mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur, Caesar ipse ab hostium castris mille et quīngentis passibus aberat (*was distant*). Tum (*then*) Cōnsidius ad Caesarem vēnit, dīxit montem ab hostibus tenērī. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem dūxit, aciem instrūxit. Labiēnus, quī montem occupāverat, nostrōs exspectābat suāsque legiōnēs ā proeliō continēbat. Multō diē<sup>1</sup> Caesarī per explōrātōrēs nūntiātum est et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium propter timōrem (*fear*) falsa (*false things*) sibi nūntiāvisse. Eō diē Caesar cum cōpiis suis iter fēcit et milia passuum tria ab hostium castris castra posuit. Posterō diē Caesar ad oppidum Aeduōrum māximum, Bibracte, quod milia passuum duodēviginti aberat (*was distant*) iter facere cōstituit (*determined*), ubi cōpiam frūmentī esse putāvit. Helvētiī Rōmānōs territōs (*frightened*) fugere putāvērunt. Itaque (*therefore*) iter convertērunt (*they turned*) et in novissimum nostrum āgmen multōs impetūs faciēbant.

---

<sup>1</sup> multō diē, at much day, i.e. when the day was far advanced.

## CHAPTER XLV.

**Participles.**

**248.** Learn all the participles, active and passive, of *amō*, *habēō*, *dūcō*, *audiō*, and *capiō*; also of *sum*. Note the stems and endings.

Observe that there is no present passive nor perfect active participle.

Participles ending in *-ns* are declined like *potēns*. See p. 56. Those ending in *-us* are declined like *bonus*. See p. 18.

**249. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.**

1. **Hostēs pūgnantēs per urbem currēbant**, *the enemy ran fighting through the city.*
2. **Multōs in urbe occīsōs vidēbat**, *he saw many who had been slain in the city (literally, many having been slain, or, many slain).*
3. **Epistulam scriptam ad amīcū mīsit**, *he wrote a letter and sent it to his friend (literally, he sent a letter having been written, or, a written letter to his friend).*
4. **Eum domī manentem saepe vidēbam**, *I often saw him while he was remaining at home (literally, him remaining at home).*
5. **Miles graviter vulnerātus fortiter pūgnāvit**, *although severely wounded, the soldier fought bravely (literally, the soldier, having been severely wounded, fought bravely).*
6. **Servus liberātus erit laetus**, *the slave, if liberated, will be glad (literally, the slave, having been liberated, will be glad).*

7. **His rēbus mōtī proelium committēbant**, *because they were influenced by these considerations they joined battle* (literally, *moved by these considerations, they joined battle*).

Observe (1) that the participles in the above sentences agree with nouns or pronouns in gender, number, and case, like other adjectives; (2) that the present participle represents an action as going on, and the perfect participle action as completed, with reference to the time denoted by the leading verb; (3) that most of the participles are equivalent to clauses in English. Before translation, ascertain the precise idea expressed by the participle.

The use of the future active participle and the gerundive (sometimes called the future passive participle) is confined for the most part to special constructions, which will be considered in a subsequent chapter.

## 250.

## VOCABULARY.

**arma**, -ōrum, *n.*, arms.

**dēditīō**, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender.

**inopia**, -ae, *f.*, want.

**iūsiūrandum**, **iūrisiūrandī**,  
(*iūs and iūrandum*), oath.

**tēlum**, -ī, *n.*, weapon, missile.

**cōgō**, -ere, **coēgī**, **coāctum**,  
collect, compel.

**addūcō**, -ere, -**dūxi**, -**ductum**,  
(*ad and dūcō*), lead to, induce.

**ob** (*prep. with acc.*), on account of.

## 251.

## EXERCISES.

- I. 1. **Agricolam equōs ad flūmen agentem vidimus.**  
2. **Civitas ob eam rem incitata multitudinem hominum ex agris cōgēbat.** 3. **Ē locō superiōre in nostrōs (militēs) venientēs tela iaciēbant.** 4. **Helvētīi omnium rerum inopiā adducti lēgātōs dē dēditione ad eum misērunt.**  
5. **Centuriō fortissimē pūgnāns interficiēbātur.** 6. **Ab hostibus capti statim interficiēmur.** 7. **Hāc orātiōne**



adducti inter se fidem et iusiurandum dant. 8. Legionēs se armis defendentes in collem se recepērunt. 9. Oppidum naturā ac manū munitum expugnatum est. 10. Equitēs impediti in flumine occisi sunt. 11. Ariovistus iureiurandō tenēri nōn coactus est. 12. Cōsēderat cum omnibus copiis quae ē multis civitatibus coactae erant.

II. 1. The boy saw his sister writing a letter. 2. Caesar, as he was influenced by these considerations, pitched his camp on the middle of the hill. 3. The Belgæ, although they fought bravely, were slain. 4. The men, if frightened, will soon flee. 5. Will you come to Corinth? 6. Influenced by a lack of grain and other supplies, we shall surrender (make a surrender). 7. He has troops collected from many states. 8. Did you say that Labienus drew up a line of battle? 9. The enemy threw their missiles and retired. 10. We saw your brother as he came home. 11. On account of these things the troops were led out of the camp. 12. They had many arms concealed in the town.



## CHAPTER XLVI.

### Deponent Verbs.

**252.** Deponent verbs are passive in form, but active in meaning. They are conjugated like the passive of other verbs, except that the future infinitive has the active form (*mīrātūrus esse*, not *mīrātum īrī*), and they have the participles of both voices.

**mīrāns**, *admiring.*

**mīrātūrus**, *about to admire.*

**mīrātus**, *having admired.*

**mīrandus**, *to be admired.*

The perfect participle is usually active in meaning, but the gerundive is always passive.

### 253. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Miles gladiō ūtitur**, *the soldier uses his sword.*

2. **Caesar urbe potītus est**, *Cæsar got possession of the city.*

Observe that *gladiō* is used with *ūtitur*, and *urbe* with *potītus est*.

A few other verbs are followed by the ablative.

**254. RULE.** — *The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor and their compounds govern the ablative.*

### 255. VOCABULARY.

**angustiae**, -ārum, *f.*, narrow  
pass, narrowness.

**impedimenta**, -ōrum, *n.*, baggage.

**miror**, -ārī, -ātus, *admire, wonder at.*

**sequor, sequī, secūtus**, *follow.*

**vereor, verērī, verītus**, *fear.*

**ūtor, ūtī, ūsus**, *use.*

**fruor, fruī, frūctus**, *enjoy.*

**fungor, fungī, fūctus**, *perform.*

**potior, potīrī, potītus**, *get possession of.*

**vescor, vescī**, *eat.*

### 256. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nōn hostem sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum veremur. 2. Bonis libris semper fruimur. 3. Nostri impedimentis castrisque potiti sunt. 4. Mercator corporum magnitudinem Gallorum mirabatur. 5. Caesar hostes fugientes secutus multos interfecit. 6. Ob eam rem milites gladiis facilius utebantur. 7. Dicunt duces hostes magna celeritate secutum esse. 8. Barbari

tōtā urbe potītī erant. 9. In prōvinciā multīs rēbus fruebāmur. 10. Dux māgnam multitudinem peditum ex agrīs coēgit. 11. Equī frūmentō vescuuntur. 12. Mārcus labōre fungitur.

II. 1. The Helvetians and Sequanians give an oath to each other.<sup>1</sup> 2. The general drew up a line of battle before the camp. 3. Many of the inhabitants were killed as they were retiring into the town. 4. Did you see the boy who threw the stone? 5. The commander divided among his soldiers the arms which were captured. 6. The enemy threw their missiles and fled into the woods. 7. Whose book did you use? 8. The general, after having followed the Helvetians many days, took possession of their camp. 9. No one enjoys extreme want. 10. The soldier said at once that he did not fear the enemy. 11. Eagles eat small animals. 12. The soldiers finished (performed) their toil and withdrew.

## 257.

## READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 24-26.]

Postquam (*after*) id nūntiātum est, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem dūxit equitēsque contrā hostēs mīsīt. Ipse in colle mediō aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor et in summō (*the top of*) colle duās legiōnēs et omnia auxilia (*auxiliaries*) posuit, ac tōtum montem hominibus complēvit. Helvētīī, quī cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī erant, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt (*brought together*); ipsī nostrōs equitēs superāvērunt et ad prīmam nostram aciem vēnērunt. Caesar celeriter proelium commīsīt. Militēs ē locō superiōre pīla mīsērunt quibus

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 251. I. 7.

facile hostium aciem perfrēgerunt (*broke through*). Tum (*then*) gladiis in eos impetum fecerunt. Galli diu fortiter pugnauerunt; tandem (*at length*) in montem qui suberat (*was near*) se recēperunt. In itinere et ad montem diu et acriter pugnatum est. Tandem impedimentis castrisque Helvetiorum nostri potiti sunt. Ibi (*there*) Orgetorigis filia atque unus ē filius captus est. Helvetiorum circiter centum et triginta ex eo proelio fugerunt, et quarto die in fines Lingonum (*of the Lingonēs*) venerunt.



## CHAPTER XLVII.

**Possum: Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse.**

**258.** Learn the indicative and the infinitive moods of *possum* (p. 222).

**259. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.**

1. **Laudari est gratum**, *to be praised is pleasant*; or, *it is pleasant to be praised*.
2. **Videri non est semper esse**, *seeming (to seem) is not always being (to be)*.

Observe that *laudari* (in 1) and *videri* (in 2) are subjects, and that *esse* (in 2) is a predicate. This use of the infinitive is common to both English and Latin, but more common in Latin.

**260. RULE.**—*An infinitive with or without a subject-accusative may be used as the subject of a sentence or as a predicate noun.*

**261. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.**

1. *Pugnāre nōn potest, he cannot fight.*
2. *Pugnāre nōn poterat, he could not fight.*
3. *Pugnāre parābant, they were preparing to fight.*

Observe that the infinitive *pugnāre* is used with *potest*, *poterat*, and *parābant* not as subject, but to complete the thought. This use of the infinitive also is common to English and Latin.

Such an infinitive is called a *complementary infinitive*.

**262. RULE.** — *The infinitive is used with certain verbs to complete their meaning.*

Remember that *can* and *could* should usually be expressed by some form of *possum*.

**263. EXERCISES ON FORMS.**

I. 1. *Nihil vidēre potest.* 2. *Vēlōciter currere potes.*  
 3. *Iuvāre mē nōn poterat.* 4. *Stāre nōn potuit.* 5. *Sōlī multa reperire potuerāmus.* 6. *Impedimenta capere potuerunt.* 7. *Parātus est domum venīre.* 8. *Properābam tē vocāre.* 9. *Coāctī sunt sē recipere.*

II. 1. I am able to conceal nothing. 2. He could not use his foot. 3. We shall not be able to come. 4. He hurried to assist us. 5. I am ready to follow you. 6. We could not read. 7. He will not be able to run. 8. They could not retreat.

**264. VOCABULARY.**

*amicitia*, -ae, *f.*, friendship.

*periculum*, -i, *n.*, danger.

*praesidium*, -i, *n.*, guard, protection, escort.

*socius*, -i, *m.*, ally.

*cadō*, -ere, *cecidi*, *cāsum*, fall.

*iubeō*, -ēre, *iūssī*, *iūssum*, command.

*polliceor*, -ērī, *pollicitus*, promise.

*possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, be able.

*sine* (*prep. with abl.*), without.

## 265.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar oppidō potiri nōn potuit. 2. Milites armīs uti nōn potuerunt. 3. Sociis praesidium pollicēri nōn potuerat. 4. In colle equitēs equīs uti nōn potuerunt. 5. Pauci dē nostris hostēs secūti proeliō ceciderunt. 6. Nōne scitis mē inter vōs omnia tēla dīvisisse? 7. Sine periculō per angustias iter facere nōn possumus. 8. Eam ob rem vōbiscum dē dēditione agere nōn poterimus. 9. Vidistine Cicerōnis dē amicitia librum? 10. Rem publicam<sup>1</sup> in magnō periculō esse cōsul putat. 11. Caesar principēs obsidēs ad sē addūcere iussit. 12. Militem labōre centuriōnēs fūcti sunt. 13. Inopia adducti hominēs equīs vescuntur.

II. 1. He says that he is not afraid of you. 2. We could see the baggage of the enemy. 3. The state could not be bound by an oath. 4. Influenced by want, we hurry into the territory of our allies. 5. The consul promised<sup>2</sup> to protect his allies from wrongs. 6. The general could not come to Rome without a guard. 7. The commander-in-chief ordered a band of men to be collected from the country districts (*agri*). 8. You enjoy the friendship of all good citizens. 9. We made an attack upon the camp, and many brave men fell. 10. The barbarians were astonished at the size of our ships.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Rēs publica*, public thing, state.

<sup>2</sup> *Polliceor* is usually followed by future infinitive, i.e., the indirect discourse, but sometimes by the complementary infinitive.

## CHAPTER XLVIII.

Compounds of *Sum*.*Dative with Compounds.*

**266.** Learn the indicative and infinitive moods of *prōsum* (p. 223).

The peculiarities of compounds of *sum*, except *possum* and *prōsum*, will be readily learned from the vocabulary.

**267.** ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *In periculis amicis aderat, he aided his friends in dangers.*
2. *Dumnorix equitibus praeftit, Dumnorix commanded the cavalry.*
3. *Liberōs amicis committēbant, they were entrusting their children to their friends.*

Notice that the verbs of the above sentences are compounded with *ad*, *prae*, and *con*, and that they govern the dative case.

**268.** RULE. — *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super govern the dative as indirect object.*

The dative is used with all compounds of *sum* except *possum* and *absum*.

**269.** VOCABULARY.

**auxilium**, -i, *n.*, help, assistance.

**Brūtus**, -ī, *m.*, Brutus.

**vērūs**, -a, -um, true.

**absum**, -esse, **āfui**, (*ab* and *sum*), be absent, away, distant.

**adsum**, -esse, -fui, (*ad* and *sum*), be present, assist.

**accidō**, -ere, -cidī, (*ad* and *cadō*), fall upon, happen.

**dēsum**, -esse, -fui, (*dē* and *sum*), be away, fail.

**praesum**, -esse, -fui, (*prae and sum*), be over, at the head of, command.

**praepōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positum, (*prae and pōnō*), place over, place in command of

**prōsum**, **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, (*prō(d) and sum*), be profitable, help.

**supersum**, -esse, -fuī, (*super and sum*), be over, survive. **circiter**, *adv.*, about.

**270.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Caesar hibernis quae fecerat legatum praeposuit. 2. Titus amicis in periculis non deerat. 3. Brutus navibus longis praefuerat. 4. Ex eo proelio circiter hominum milia centum et quadraginta superfuērunt. 5. Cōpia librōrum discipulis non semper prōdest. 6. Pecūniā vōbīs adesse possumus. 7. Socii rei publicae auxilium pollicēbantur. 8. Vēra amicitia omnibus prōdest. 9. Nautae aliquīdē navibus in aquam cadēbant. 10. Sine auxiliō castris impedimentisque potiri non poterimus. 11. Pēius mihi quam tibi accidit. 12. Domus mea ab urbe milia passuum decem abest. 13. Equitēs dēfessi explorātōrum labōre functi frūmentō vescēbantur.

II. 1. The best protection of the republic is the valor of its citizens. 2. The citizens were not able to use the help which had been sent to them. 3. The cavalry followed the enemy many miles. 4. He says that he is not afraid of dangers. 5. I am astonished at the skill of these young men. 6. You could have been present at the conference. 7. Do you think that Brutus will command the army? 8. We enjoy the books which we are reading. 9. The camp of Brutus was about five miles distant from the narrow pass. 10. How many of the allies survived (from) this battle? 11. My father commanded us always to speak the truth (true things).



## 271.

## READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 27-29.]

Helvëtiî omnium rêrum inopiâ adducti lëgâtôs dë dëditiône ad Caesarem mîsêrunt, quî in itinere eum convênêrunt et pâcem petivêrunt. Iûssit eôs in eô locô quô tum (*then*) essent (*were*, subjunctive of *sum*) suum adventum exspectâre. Quod iûsserat fêcêrunt. Postquam (*after*) ad eum locum Caesar vënerat circiter hominum mîlia sex nocte ð castris Helvëtiôrum fûgêrunt atque ad Rhënum finêsq; Germânôrum contendêrunt (*hastened*). Hôs ab eis quôrum per finês iter fêcerant reductôs (*brought back*, perfect passive participle of *reducô*) Caesar in hostium numerô habuit; <sup>1</sup> reliquôs in dëditiônem recëpit. Helvëtiôs, Tulingôs, Latobrigôs in finês suôs unde (*whence*) vënerant reverti (*to return*) iûssit. Hôc bellô Helvëtiôrum et sociôrum circiter mîlia ducenta quinquâgintâ octô occisi sunt.



## CHAPTER XLIX.

## Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

272. 1. **Dumnorix Helvëtiis favet**, *Dumnorix favors the Helvetians.*  
 2. **Puer patrî pâret**, *the boy obeys his father.*  
 3. **Miles gladiô sibi nocuit**, *the soldier hurt (injured) himself with his sword.*

Observe that these verbs govern the dative in Latin, though their English equivalents are transitive.

<sup>1</sup> In **hostium numerô habuit**, *held in the number of his enemies*, i.e. *put to death*.

**273. RULE.**—*Most verbs meaning to favor, please, trust, believe, help, and their opposites, also to command, obey, serve, resist, persuade, and the like, govern the dative.*

These verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally, *i.e.* corresponding to an English verb with the indefinite *it* as a subject; as, *nocētur*, it hurts (injures), *i.e.* harm (injury) is done; *patri pārētur*, obedience is rendered to the father. Observe that with the impersonal passive of verbs governing the dative, the dative used with the active is retained unchanged.

*Dēlectō*, *iuvō*, and *iubeō*, (already familiar to the pupil) and a few other verbs of this class govern the accusative.

## 274. VOCABULARY.

<i>equitātus</i> , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , cavalry.	<i>faveō</i> , -ēre, <i>fāvi</i> , <i>fautum</i> , favor.
<i>lēx</i> , <i>lēgis</i> , <i>f.</i> , law.	
<i>allēnus</i> , -a, -um, ( <i>allus</i> ), belonging to another, unfavorable.	<i>noceō</i> , -ēre, -uī, <i>nocitum</i> , harm, injure.
<i>crēdō</i> , <i>crēdere</i> , <i>crēdidī</i> , <i>crēditum</i> , ( <i>cf. Eng. credit</i> ), trust.	<i>parcō</i> , -ere, <i>peperci</i> , spare.
	<i>pāreō</i> , -ēre, -uī, obey.
	<i>longē</i> , <i>adv.</i> , far.

## 275. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Boni civēs lēgibus civitātis pārent. 2. Eā orātiōne sibi ac rei publicae nocuit. 3. Scīmus mala omnibus accidere. 4. Ille puer vēra non semper dicit neque ei crēdere possum. 5. Cicerō prōvinciam omnem Caesarī favēre reppererat. 6. Equitātus Helvētiōrum in aliēnō locō proelium committunt, et tertia eōrum pars occīsa est. 7. Iubet servum sōlis occāsū equum ad sē addūcere. 8. Equitātum sine māgnō periculō sequi poterimus. 9. Labiēnus prōvinciae praepositus domō in Galliam properāvit. 10. Caesar mulieribus ac liberis pepercit

sed virōs interfēcit. 11. Captīvīs nihil<sup>1</sup> nocēbitur.  
12. Propter auxili adventum equitātus nōs nōn longē  
secūtus est.

II. 1. I was not able to be present at the conference.  
2. Brutus was distant from the city about twenty miles.  
3. Large armies are not profitable to republics. 4. A  
few who had survived from the battle fell in the flight.  
5. We were not far distant from the largest town of our  
allies. 6. Soldiers promise to obey their generals. 7. The  
ambassador did not trust the escort (*praesidium*) which  
had been sent. 8. The consul favors severe laws. 9. He  
will spare Dumnorix on account of the friendship of his  
brother. 10. He was able to assist his younger brothers.  
11. Who is at the head of this army?



## CHAPTER L.

### Ferō and Compounds of Ferō.

**276.** Learn the indicative, infinitives, and participles  
of both voices of *ferō* (p. 226).

Observe that in the forms referred to, the irregularities are  
confined to the present tense.

What are the irregularities?

The changes which take place in the final consonant of the  
preposition in the compounds will be learned from the principal  
parts.

---

<sup>1</sup> Used adverbially, *in nothing*.

## 277.

## VOCABULARY.

cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, advice, counsel, plan.

lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, nation.

eō, *adv.*, to that place, thither.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, carry, bring.

cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, collātum, (*con and ferō*), bring together, collect.

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, (*ex and ferō*), bring or carry out, produce.

inferō, -ferre, intulī, illātum, (*in and ferō*), bear against; bellum inferre, begin war.

## 278.

## EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Fert, ferunt. 2. Fertur, feruntur. 3. Effers, effortis. 4. Tulimus, tulit. 5. Effert, infert. 6. Cōnferimus, efferunt. 7. Cōnferēbat, cōnferēbantur. 8. Lātus est, ēlātī sunt. 9. Collātī sunt, illātum erat. 10. Auxilium ferre potest. 11. Dicit sē auxilium lātūrum esse.

II. 1. We shall carry, he was carried. 2. They collect, they were being collected. 3. You (*sing.*) carry, you (*plur.*) are carried. 4. It was carried out, they were carried in. 5. They had collected arms. 6. We said that he would begin war.

## 279.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cīvēs Rōmānī nōmen rēgis ferre nōn potuerunt. 2. Omnēs Galliae nātiōnēs linguā et lēgibus sunt dissimilēs. 3. Multī sunt in nostrā urbe quī in bellō arma tulērunt. 4. In silvās palūdēsque incolae fugiunt suaque omnia eō cōnferunt. 5. Frūmentum trium mēnsium domō quemque efferre iubet. 6. Bona cōnsilia senum iuvenibus saepe prōfuērunt et semper prōderunt. 7. Neque Aeduīs

neque sociis eorum bellum inferam. 8. Mihi hic vir non nocuit, sed ei credere non possum. 9. Circiter mille homines qui in loco alieno coacti erant pugnare interfecti sunt. 10. Pater putat malum filio accidisse.

II. 1. They were daily carrying grain from the fields into the camp. 2. Brutus did not spare his own son. 3. My brother is away, but he will be here in a short time. 4. Only ten days of this month remain. 5. Who was in command of the Roman legions in Gaul? 6. Good cavalry was not lacking in our war. 7. It is not easy to obey all men. 8. My mother favors her youngest son. 9. True friends render assistance in danger and adversity. 10. You see by far the most beautiful part of Gaul. 11. Brutus will be appointed to the command of the cavalry.

## 280.

## READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 30-31]

Post (*after*) bellum Helveticorum totius fere Gallie legati, principes civitatum ad Caesarem conveniunt. Petierunt ut (*that*) sibi concilium totius Gallie in diem certam indicere (*to appoint*) liceret (*it might be permitted*, with dative). Dixerunt sese habere quasdam res quas ab eo petere vellent (*wished*). Hoc Caesar permisit (*permitted*). Principes diem concilio constituerunt. Post concilium pro his Divitiacus apud Caesarem dixit: Gallie totius factiones (*parties*) esse duas; harum alterius ducem esse Aeduos, alterius Sequanos. Hos de potestate multos iam annos bellum gessisse. A Sequanis Germanos in Galliam traductos (*led across*) esse et Sequanorum hostes multis proeliis superavisse; Sequanos

ipsōs Germānīs pārēre coāctōs esse. Ducem Germānōrum, Ariovistum, barbarum atque crudēlem (*cruel*) esse. Caesarem exercitū suō eum prohibēre posse nē<sup>1</sup> māiōrem multitudinem in Galliam dūcat, Galliamque omnem ab eius iniuriā dēfendere posse.



## CHAPTER LI.

### Irregular Verbs *Volō*, *Nōlō*, and *Mālō*.

**281.** Learn the indicative, infinitive, and participles of *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō* (p. 224). Observe that the irregularity of ending is confined to the present tense.

#### **282.** EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Lēgī parēre vult.* 2. *Scrībere volumus.* 3. *Labōrāre nōn vult.* 4. *Legere māvult.* 5. *Scire volui.* 6. *Pūgnāre nōlunt.* 7. *Iubēre volēbat.* 8. *Fugere nōluit.* 9. *Dixit sē nōlle dūcere.* 10. *Dicunt sē mālle sequī.*

II. 1. You (sing.) wish to move. 2. He is not willing to lead. 3. We prefer to remain. 4. He desired to be well. 5. They were not willing to follow. 6. He wishes to be present. 7. They will be unwilling to follow. 8. He says that he prefers to run. 9. What does he wish to say? 10. They wish to command.

---

<sup>1</sup> *nē . . . dūcat, from leading; or, that he should not lead.*

## 283.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>profectiō</b> , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , departure.	<b>nōlō</b> , <b>nōlle</b> , <b>nōlui</b> , ( <i>nē and</i>
<b>iūstus</b> , -a, -um, just.	<b>volō</b> ), be unwilling.
<b>cōnor</b> , -āri, -ātus, try, endeavor.	<b>mālō</b> , <b>mālle</b> , <b>mālui</b> , ( <i>magis</i>
<b>incidō</b> , -ere, -cidī, ( <i>in and</i>	<i>and volō</i> ), wish more, prefer.
<b>cadō</b> ), fall into, fall in with.	<b>post</b> , ( <i>prep. with acc.</i> ), after.
<b>volō</b> , <b>velle</b> , <b>volui</b> , be willing, wish.	

## 284.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mōns quem Caesar ā Labiēnō occupārī voluit ab hostibus tenētur. 2. Per prōvinciam nostram sine iniūriā iter facere volunt. 3. Post profectiōnem equitātūs captīvi cūstōdibus nocēre conātī sunt. 4. Nōn vult aliī iniūriam inferre. 5. Senex filiō quī inciderat in rēs adversās auxilium tulit. 6. Mālumus aestāte litus incolere quam in urbe manēre. 7. Virī multārum nātiōnum Rōmam sē suaque contulerant. 8. Puella ex urbe multa domum efferre vult. 9. Nātūrā cōgimur ad quietem māgnā noctis parte ūtī. 10. Captīvi cūstōdibus nocēre cōnātī impedimenta portāre coācti sunt.

II. 1. Some men are not willing to obey the laws of the state. 2. The young man prefers to use his own language (rather) than that of another. 3. The boy is not willing to take the advice of older men. 4. The just judge did not favor the citizens of his own city. 5. Our country produces food for other nations. 6. The general was not willing to encamp in an unfavorable place. 7. Other nations use much food which our country produces. 8. Cæsar spared his enemies, and they (*quī*) slew him. 9. We desire to trust those among whom we dwell. 10. The lieutenants will select a place for a camp and carry thither an abundance of everything.

## CHAPTER LII.

Irregular Verbs *Eō* and *Fīō*.*Two Datives.*

**285.** Learn the indicative, the infinitives, and the participles of *eō* and *fīō* (p. 227).

Notice that *i*, the stem of *eō* is changed to *e* in the first person singular and the third person plural of the present indicative, and in the present participle except in the nominative singular.

*Fīō* is used as the passive of *faciō*.

**286.**

## EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Ad colloquium it. 2. In urbem ibunt. 3. Initium fugae fit. 4. In vicum iit. 5. Clārus fiēs. 6. Proelium factum erat. 7. Māgnus fieri voluit. 8. Nōlūi ire. 9. Ierant, ierint in Insulam. 10. Nōn fit poēta.

II. 1. We are going to the village. 2. We shall go, he has gone. 3. It happened to be summer. 4. He preferred to go. 5. He has become a man. 6. I desire to become a merchant. 7. They will go in the night. 8. He says that his father has gone. 9. He says that he is about to go. 10. He will become famous.

**287.**

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Aeduī Caesarī auxiliō erant**, *the Aeduans were (for) a support to Cæsar.*
2. **Equitēs auxiliō Brūtō missi sunt**, *the cavalry were sent as a support to Brutus.*



Observe that in each sentence one of the datives may be translated by *for*, and the other by *to*. The one translated by *for* is called the dative of *purpose*. The dative of purpose is frequently better rendered as a predicate noun (sometimes with *as*) than by *for*.

**288. RULE.** — *Two datives, of the object to which and of the end for which, are used with sum and a few other verbs.*

**289.**

## VOCABULARY.

dolor, -ōris, *m.*, grief, pain.

parēns, -entis, *m.* and *f.*, parent.

trāns, (*prep. with acc.*), across.

dēbeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum, ought, owe.

eō, ire, ivī (īī), itum, go.

exeō, -īre, -īī, -itum, (*ex and eō*), go out or away.

redeō, -īre, -īī, -itum, (*red and eō*), go back, return.

fiō, fierī, factus, (*pass. of faciō*), be made, become.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, be born.

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, (*prae and ferō*), carry before, prefer.

**290.**

## EXERCISES.

I 1. Alius agricola fierī vult, alius mercātor. 2. Omnes hūmānitātem voluptātī praeferre dēbēmus. 3. Agricola auxiliō filiīs domum hominem mīsit. 4. Cōnābimur ante profectiōnem tuam domum redīre. 5. Parentēs nostrī ex urbe exiērunt; multō diē redībunt. 6. Multi iuvenēs domō exire quam cum parentibus manēre mālunt. 7. Omnia nostra cōferēmus et in prōvinciam ībimus. 8. Senex nātiōnum multārum linguīs ūtitur. 9. Parentēs meī ex Graeciā multa efferēbant. 10. Nātus quadrāgintā annōs Caesar cōsul factus est. 11. Ubi fuistī dē secundā vigiliā proximae noctis? 12. Cūr āfuistī domō? 13. Nātiōnēs quae trāns Rhēnum incolēbant Gallicā linguā nōn ūtēbantur.

II. 1. I shall try to find out his plan. 2. I have always wished to go to Rome. 3. The departure of our parents was (for) a great grief to us. 4. Every one<sup>1</sup> ought to prefer to become good (rather) than famous. 5. He was unwilling to wage war upon his fellow-citizens. 6. In the wars of Rome many citizens were slain. 7. The merchant desired to be away two months. 8. He is a just man and ought to be made a judge. 9. The cavalry of all Gaul came together in one place after Cæsar's departure. 10. We fell in with your parents in Rome twenty days ago.

## 291.

## READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, I. 33-40.]

Caesar Gallōrum animōs cōfirmāvit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae (dat. of cūra, *care*) futūram esse; crēdere<sup>2</sup> sēsē auctōritāte suā adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriis factūrum esse. Tum (*then*) concilium dīmīsit. Lēgātī ā Caesare missī ab Ariovistō pōstulāvērunt ut (*that*) in colloquium venīret (*would come*). Hīs Ariovistus respondit sē ventūrum nōn esse. Caesar iterum lēgātōs mīsit quī dīcēbant sē Aeduōs aliōsque populī Rōmānī amīcōs dēfēnsūrum esse. Eōdem tempore ad Caesarem lēgātī ab Aeduīs et Treverīs veniēbant quī dīcēbant multōs Germānōs in Galliam vēnisse et in finibus suis cōnsēdisse. Hīs rēbus adductus Caesar bellum quam celerrimē cum Ariovistō gerere cōstituit, et Vesontionem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, ire

<sup>1</sup> The Romans often used *omnēs* where we say *every one*.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes the indirect discourse depends upon a verb merely implying the idea of saying (here *pollicitus est*). In English, insert *saying* or *and said*.

properāvit. Militēs, vōcibus territi Gallōrum ac mercātorum qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germānōs, incredibili virtūte atque exercitātiōne (*practice*) in armīs esse dicebant, longius (comparative of *longē*) ire nōlebant. Eōrum animōs Caesar longā orātiōne cōfirmāvit.



## CHAPTER LIII.

### Derivation and Composition of Words.

**292.** Latin words, like English words, are sometimes simple, that is, made of one part; and sometimes compound, that is, made of two or more parts, each of which has a distinct meaning. Examples of compound words have already been given, some of which are repeated in the following lists for comparison and further study.

<b>sum,</b>	<i>I am.</i>
<b>ab-sum,</b>	<i>I am away (from), I am absent.</i>
<b>ad-sum,</b>	<i>I am at or near (the person or thing in question), I am present.</i>
<b>dē-sum,</b>	<i>I am away from, I am wanting or lacking, I fail.</i>
<b>prae-sum,</b>	<i>I am before, am in front of, am present, am at the head of (as a leader is in front of the army), I command.</i>
<b>prō-sum,</b>	<i>I am for (a person or thing), I help, am advantageous.</i>
<b>super-sum,</b>	<i>I am over, I am left over, I survive.</i>
<b>pos-sum,</b>	(from <i>pot</i> [ <i>is</i> ], <i>able</i> , and <i>sum</i> ) <i>I am able, I can.</i>
<b>ferō,</b>	<i>I bear, carry, bring.</i>
<b>cōn-ferō,</b>	<i>I carry or bring together (then, because when two or more things are brought together one cannot help seeing their points of resemblance or difference, I compare).</i>

<b>dif-ferō,</b>	<i>I bear or carry apart, I put off, also I differ.</i>
<b>ef-ferō,</b>	(for <b>ec</b> [i.e. <b>ex</b> ] - <b>ferō</b> ), <i>I bear or carry out.</i>
<b>in-ferō,</b>	<i>I bear or bring in or against.</i>
<b>prae-ferō,</b>	<i>I bear or carry or put before, I prefer.</i>
<b>eō,</b>	<i>I go.</i>
<b>ex-eō,</b>	<i>I go out.</i>
<b>red-eō,</b>	<i>I go back, I return.</i>
<b>capiō,</b>	<i>I take.</i>
<b>re-cipiō,</b>	<i>I take back, recover.</i>
<b>teneō,</b>	<i>I hold.</i>
<b>con-tineō,</b>	<i>I hold together, contain, bound (in geographical sense).</i>
<b>per-tineō,</b>	<i>I hold or stretch through, extend, pertain to.</i>
<b>sus-tineō,</b>	(for <b>sub-teneō</b> ), <i>I hold up from underneath, sustain.</i>
<b>ob-tineō,</b>	<i>I hold (against opposition), I maintain.</i>

The prefixes in the compounds given above are of very great use in Latin word-making. Learn their meanings. Notice that when the stem of a verb compounded with one of these prefixes contains a short *a* or *e*, that vowel is changed to short *i* (e.g. **capiō**, **re-cipiō**, **teneō**, **con-tineō**). Notice also that the final consonant of the prefix is sometimes changed to suit the initial consonant of the word with which it is used (e.g. **ef-ferō** for **ec-ferō**, **dif-ferō** for **dis-ferō**, **sus-tineō** for **sub-tineō**).

NOTE. — There are other ways of making compounds, as **iūs-iūrandum**, *oath*, from **iūs**, *right, law*, and **iūrandum**, the gerundive of the verb **iūrō**, *to swear*. The composition of such words is explained, as they occur, in the special vocabularies from this point to the end of the book.

**293.** In the compound words given above, each part retains the meaning it has as a separate word. So, for instance, **eō** is a verb, *go*, and **ex-eō** is also a verb, *go out*. But words are made from other words by *derivation*, as well as by *composition*. Notice **amō**, *love*, **amicus**, *friendly*

or *friend*, *amicitia*, *friendship*. Here *amō* is a verb, *amicus* an adjective (used also as a noun), and *amicitia* a noun. Yet all evidently belong together in meaning, and all contain the root *am-*.

**294.** Examine the following : —

<b>imperō</b> (stem <b>imperā-</b> ), <i>I command.</i>	<b>imperātor</b> ( <b>-ōris, m.</b> ), <i>commander, general.</i>
<b>vincō</b> (stem <b>vic-</b> ), <i>I conquer.</i>	<b>victor</b> ( <b>-ōris, m.</b> ), <i>conqueror, victor.</i>

**295. RULE.** — *The ending -tor added to verb stems forms masculine nouns denoting the agent or doer of an action.*

**NOTE.** — The verb stem is most easily found by removing the ending of the supine. If the supine of the verb ends in *-sum*, the ending of the noun is *-sor* instead of *tor*; as, **dēfendō** (supine **dēfēnsūm**), *defend, dēfēnsor, defender.*

**296.** Examine the following : —

<b>dē-dō</b> (supine <b>dēditūm</b> ), <i>I surrender.</i>	<b>dēdī-tiō</b> ( <b>-ōnis, f.</b> ), <i>surrender.</i>
<b>mūnīō</b> (supine <b>mūnitūm</b> ), <i>I fortify.</i>	<b>mūnī-tiō</b> ( <b>-ōnis, f.</b> ), <i>fortification.</i>
<b>ad-veniō</b> (supine <b>adventūm</b> ), <i>I come to, arrive.</i>	<b>adventus</b> ( <b>-ūs, m.</b> ), <i>arrival.</i>

**297. RULE.** — *The endings -tiō and -tus, added to verb stems, form abstract nouns expressing action.*

**NOTE.** — The endings *-iō* (**-ōnis, f.**) and *-tūra* (**-ae, f.**) are used in the same way. If the supine of the verb ends in *-sum*, the endings are *-siō*, *-sus*, and *-sūra*; as, **ūtor** (deponent, p.p. **ūsus**), *I use, ūsus* (**-ūs, m.**), *use,*

**298.** Examine the following:—

<b>miles</b> (stem <b>milit-</b> ), <i>soldier</i> .	<b>milit-ia</b> (-ae, f.), <i>military service</i> .
<b>amicus</b> (stem <b>amico-</b> ), <i>friend</i> .	<b>amicī-tia</b> (-ae, f.), <i>friendship</i> .
<b>celer</b> (stem <b>celeri-</b> ), <i>quick</i> .	<b>celeri-tās</b> (-tātis, f.), <i>quickness</i> .
<b>vir</b> (stem <b>viro-</b> ), <i>man</i> .	<b>vir-tūs</b> (-tūtis, f.), <i>manliness, virtue, courage</i> .
<b>māgnus</b> (stem <b>māgno-</b> ), <i>great</i> .	<b>māgni-tūdō</b> (-tūdinis, f.), <i>greatness, size</i> .

**299. RULE.**—The endings **-ia**, **-tia**, **-tās**, **-tūs**, **-tūdō**, added to adjective and noun stems, form feminine abstract nouns expressing quality.

**NOTE.**—A final *o* of the stem is regularly changed to *i* before these endings (as **amico-**, **amicitia**). In **virtūs**, formed from the stem **viro-**, the *o* is dropped. Occasionally the stem is slightly changed in some other way, as in **facultās**, *ability*, from stem **facili-** of **facilis**, *easy*.

**300.** Adjectives are formed in Latin as in English from nouns (nominal adjectives) and from verbs (verbal adjectives). So few derived adjectives are used in this book that only a few endings can be given here.

The endings **-ānus**, **-ēnus**, **-īnus**, added to noun stems minus their final vowel, form adjectives with the sense of *belonging to*; as, **Rōma**, *Rome*, **Rōmānus**, *Roman*; **alius**, *another*, **aliēnus**, *belonging to another or to others, foreign*.

The endings **-ilis** and **-ibilis** added to verb stems form adjectives denoting passive qualities; as, **faciō**, *do*, **facilis**, *doable, easy*; **crēdō**, *believe*, **crēd-i-bilis**, *to be believed, credible*.

**301.** Verbs are sometimes derived from noun or adjective stems; as, **liberō**, *set free*, from the stem of **liber**, *free*;—sometimes from verb stems. Most verbs

of the first conjugation are formed from noun or adjective stems in *a* or *o* (first or second declension), and many verbs of the fourth conjugation are formed from noun or adjective stems in *i* (third declension). Some verbs of the second and third conjugations, also, are formed from noun and adjective stems.



## CHAPTER LIV.

### Subjunctive Mood.

#### *Sequence of Tenses; Indirect Question.*

**302.** Learn the subjunctive mood of *sum* (p. 221).

What must be added to the present infinitive to form the imperfect subjunctive? How does the perfect subjunctive differ from the future perfect indicative? What must be added to the perfect infinitive to form the pluperfect subjunctive?

#### **303.** ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Reperiō ubi sis, ubi fueris,** *I am finding out where you are, where you have been (or were).*
2. **Reperiam ubi sis, ubi fueris,** *I shall find out where you are, where you have been (or were).*
3. **Reppererō ubi sis, ubi fueris,** *I shall have found out where you are, where you have been (or were).*
4. **Reperiēbam ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs,** *I was finding out where you were, where you had been.*

5. **Repperī ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs, I found out where you were, where you had been.**
6. **Reppereram ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs, I had found out where you were, where you had been.**

The tenses of the principal clauses of the first three examples — the present, the future, and the future perfect — are called *primary* or *principal* tenses. The tenses of the principal clauses of the last three examples — the imperfect, the perfect and the pluperfect — are called *secondary* or *historical* tenses.

In the subjunctive, the present and perfect are primary; the imperfect and pluperfect, secondary.

To which class of tenses, primary or secondary, do the verbs of the subordinate clauses of the first four examples belong?

To which class do the verbs of the subordinate clauses of the last three examples belong?

**304. RULE.** — *Primary tenses of the indicative are followed by primary tenses of the subjunctive, and secondary tenses by secondary tenses.*

### 305. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

#### DIRECT QUESTIONS.

1. **Quis est tuus comes?** *Who is your companion?*
2. **Ubi erās?** *Where were you?*
3. **Cūr āfuistī?** *Why were you absent?*

#### INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

1. **Sciō quis sit tuus comes,** *I know who your companion is.*
2. **Audiī ubi essēs,** *I heard where you were.*
3. **Repperī cūr abessēs,** *I have found out why you were absent.*

Observe (1) that each dependent clause in the examples begins with an interrogative word; (2) that while it has not the form of a question, it gives the substance of the question.



opposite; (3) that it depends upon a verb, either as subject or object. Such clauses are called *indirect questions*.

Notice the mood of indirect questions.

**306. RULE.** — *The subjunctive is used in indirect questions.*

**307.****VOCABULARY.**

**finitimus**, -i, *m.*, neighbor,  
(*fini*-, stem of *finis*, *adj. ending* -timus).

**Procillus**, -i, *m.*, Procillus.

**terra**, -ae, *f.*, earth, land.

**ūsus**, -ūs, *m.*, advantage, use.

**hortor**, -ārī, -ātus, urge, exhort.

**intellegō**, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum,  
(*inter* and *legō*), understand.

**persequor**, -sequi, -secūtus,  
pursue.

**quaerō**, -ere, *quaesivī*, *quaesitum*, ask, inquire about.

**308.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Ubi fueris proximā nocte intellegere nōn possum. 2. Cūr domī nōn essēs mirābātur. 3. Māter intellegit quid liberis ūsuī sit. 4. Iūlia patriam omnibus terrīs praeferit. 5. Post bellum patria nostra secundīs rēbus ūsa est. 6. Magister ā mē quaesivit cūr āfuissem. 7. Quae causa dolōris esset mirātus est. 8. Procillus in ipsum Caesarem hostem equitatū persequentem incidit. 9. Nauta Iūliam sibi uxōrī dēlēgit. 10. Dumnorix et domī et in finitimīs civitātibus multōs amicōs habēbat. 11. Centuriō suōs hortātus expectantibus<sup>1</sup> sīgnum dat. 12. Puerī quī trāns flūmen fūgērunt nōlunt dīcere ubi fuerint.

II. 1. He asks me why I was absent so long. 2. Cicero was made consul by the Romans when forty-two years old. 3. I will endeavor to be just to every one.<sup>2</sup> 4. You ought to go home early every day. 5. Your parents

<sup>1</sup> See 50, note.

<sup>2</sup> With *iustus* use *in* with acc., not dative.

know where you are. 6. Your parents knew where you were. 7. After the departure of my friends I returned home. 8. Everybody prefers to go from the city in summer. 9. My father understands what books are agreeable to me. 10. They threw their arms to the ground and fled. 11. We wish to be useful to our neighbors.



## CHAPTER LV.

### First Conjugation: Subjunctive Active.

#### *Clauses of Purpose (Final Clauses).*

**309.** Learn the subjunctive active of *amō*.  
Inflect the subjunctive of *nārrō*, *vāstō*, *occupō*, *oēlō*.

#### **310.** ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Lēgātum mittit ut agrōs vāstet*, he sends a lieutenant that he may lay waste, in order to lay waste, to lay waste, the fields.
2. *Lēgātum mittit quī (ut is) agrōs vāstet*, he sends a lieutenant who is to lay waste, in order to lay waste, to lay waste, the fields.
3. *Ex duce petunt nē agrōs vāstet*, they ask the commander that he may not lay waste, not to lay waste, the fields.

Notice the various English equivalents of the subordinate clauses beginning with *ut*, *nē*, and *quī*, and also the mood of the verbs which follow these particles.

What is the difference in meaning between *ut* and *nē*?

*Ut . . . vāstet*, *quī . . . vāstet*, and *nē . . . vāstet* express the purpose of the action of the principal verb. Such clauses are called *clauses of purpose (final clauses)*.

**311. RULE.** — *The subjunctive with ut, nē, or a relative is used to express purpose (final clauses).*

**CAUTION.** — The rule for sequence of tenses given in the last chapter must be observed in clauses of purpose (final clauses).

**312.****VOCABULARY.**

**mors, mortis, f.,** death.

**tātus, -a, -um,** safe.

**cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvi, -nitum,**  
(*con and gnōscō*), find out.

**moneō, -ēre, monui, monitum,**  
advise, warn.

**relinquō, -ere, -liqui, -litum,** leave.

**remaneō, -ēre, -mānsi, no**  
*supine; fut. part., remān-*  
**sūrus, (re and maneō),**  
remain.

**vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** avoid.

**ut, conj.,** that, in order that.

**nē, conj.,** that not, in order that  
not.

**313.****EXERCISES ON FORMS.**

I. 1. Eum mittit ut vāstet, occupet, iuvet. 2. Eōs mittit ut vāstent, occupent, iuvent. 3. Eum mīsit ut vāstāret, occupāret, iuvāret. 4. Eōs mittet ut vāstent, occupent, iuvent. 5. Eōs monet nē cēlent, properent, vītent, liberent. 6. Eum monēbat nē cēlāret, properāret, vītāret, liberāret.

II. 1. He advises them to carry, hasten, adorn, set free. 2. He was advising them not to carry, hasten, adorn, set free. 3. He sent cavalry to assist, to attack, to set free. 4. He will send cavalry to assist, to attack, to set free.

**314.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Labiēnus trāns flūmen māgnās cōpiās mīsit quae mūnitum locum occupārent. 2. Caesar quaesivit quot Germānī in Galliā essent. 3. Quaerit quā dē causā sē

vītāverim. 4. Mors clārī poētae dolōrī cīvibus erat. 5. Cūstōdēs captīvōs ad montem fugientēs persequēbantur. 6. Iūssit mulierēs et liberōs ex oppidō exīre ut iniūriam vītarent. 7. Perīculī temporibus sociīs auxilium ferre dēbēmus. 8. Trēs legiōnēs reliquit ut oppidum ab impetū hostium tūtum esset. 9. Imperātor mē monet ut domī hiemem. 10. Cōgnōscēmus ubi arma tua cēlāveris. 11. Māior nātū filius domō discēdere, minor remanēre māvult.

II. 1. He did not know why I was avoiding him. 2. I will see who is in the garden. 3. He advised his son to conceal nothing. 4. He sent his servant to carry grain to his horse. 5. We shall return home at<sup>1</sup> the beginning of summer to assist our parents. 6. The old man urged his son to return home with the utmost speed. 7. He told me why he was hurrying. 8. We shall warn the Helvetians not to attack the towns of our neighbors. 9. I prefer the city where I was born to this (city). 10. We were unable to find the cause (what was the cause) of the boy's death. 11. My mother thinks that I am safer on land.

## 315.

## READING LESSON.

[CAESAR, *Gallic War*, I. 41-47.]

Septimō diē postquam (*after*) Vesontiōne castra mōta erant ab explōrātōribus nūntiātum est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostris mīlibus passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse. Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsīt quī eum in colloquium vocārent. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Ad colloquium Caesar decimae legiōnis mīlitēs, quōs sibi

---

<sup>1</sup> Primā aestāte.

fidissimōs habēbat, in equōs positōs sēcum dūxit. Per eōs Caesar Ariovistum prohibēre voluit nē sē interficere cōnārētur (imperf. subj. of *cōnor*). In colloquiō Ariovistus summā arrogantīā (*the greatest arrogance*) ūsus est equitēsque quī cum eō vēnerant in Rōmānōs lapidēs tēlaque iēcērunt. Caesar cum mīlitibus suis in castra sē recēpit, neque iterum (*again*) vocātus in colloquium ire volēbat, quod sine periculō sē facere posse nōn putābat, sed Gāium Valerium Procillum et Mārcum Metium mīsīt. Hīs mandāvit (*commissioned*) ut quae diceret (*said*, imperf. subj. of *dicō*) Ariovistus sibi nūntiārent. Hōs Ariovistus dicere cōnantēs prohibuit et in catēnās (*fetters, chains*) coniēcīt (*threw*).



## CHAPTER LVI.

### First Conjugation : Subjunctive Passive.

#### *Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses).*

**316.** Learn the subjunctive passive of *amō*.

#### **317.** ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puer tam dēfessus fuit ut eum iuvārem**, *the boy was so tired that I helped him.*
2. **Puer ita fēcit ut nōn amārētur**, *the boy acted so that he was not loved.*
3. **Germānī tam fortēs erant ut tōtus exercitus perturbārētur**, *the Germans were so brave that all the army was disturbed.*

4. **Nēmō tam bonus est quī ab omnibus amātur**, *no one is so good that he is loved by all.*

The clauses beginning with *ut* and *quī* in these sentences denote result (consecutive clauses). Observe that they are the same in form as purpose clauses, except that *ut nōn* is used instead of *nē* in negative sentences.

**318. RULE.** — *The subjunctive with ut, ut nōn, or a relative, is used to express result.*

**319.**

## VOCABULARY.

<b>commūtātiō</b> , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , change.	<b>sūspiciō</b> , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , suspicion.
<b>inimicus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , (in and amicus), a person unfriendly, an enemy.	<b>timor</b> , -ōris, <i>m.</i> , fear.
<b>mēns</b> , mentis, <i>f.</i> , mind.	<b>tantus</b> , -a, -um, so great.
<b>pōns</b> , pontis, <i>m.</i> , bridge.	<b>dubitō</b> , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, doubt, hesitate.

**320.**

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Eādem cōpiās quae ad portum cōnsēderant praesidiō nāvibus reliquit. 2. Iter tam difficile erat ut eōdem diē redire nōn cōnārēmur. 3. Eā pecuniā ita utēminī ut<sup>1</sup> aliīs prōsītis. 4. Tantus timor tōtū exercitū occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animīque perturbārentur. 5. Caesar ducēs militum convōcāvit ut dēliberārent quid optimum esset. 6. Adventū auxiliōrum tanta commūtātiō facta est ut nēmō in hostēs impetum facere dubitāret. 7. Omnēs finitimōs cōgnōscere volumus. 8. Caesar terrā marīque<sup>2</sup> inimicōs bellum sibi inferentēs persequēbātur. 9. Pōns in Rhodanō plūribus ante annīs factus erat. 10. Ex captivīs cōgnōvit quī cum Cicerōne

<sup>1</sup> Ita ut prōsītis, so that you may (or will) benefit, so as to benefit.

<sup>2</sup> In this phrase in is regularly omitted.

dēlībērāvissent. 11. Dux mīlitēs hortātus est ut timōris sūspiciōnem vitārent.

II. 1. He fortifies the camp that it may be safe from the attack of the enemy. 2. The town was so fortified that it was not taken by the enemy. 3. The judge was so just that he was praised by all his fellow-citizens. 4. Cicero did not think that death was the end of the soul. 5. He exhorted his sons to avoid bad company. 6. My friend warned me not to spend the winter in Britain. 7. The general understood why I hesitated to remain in camp. 8. The seashore was so pleasant that the boys were delighted. 9. The recruit is made brave by daily experience in (of the) camp. 10. The consul was disturbed in mind and spirit by the suspicion of his enemies.



## CHAPTER LVII.

### Second Conjugation: Subjunctive Mood.

*Purpose and Result Clauses.* — Continued.

**321.** Learn the subjunctive active and passive of *habēō*.

### **322.** ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

*Clauses after Verbs of Fearing.*

1. **Verētur ut locum occupet**, he fears that he will not get possession of the place.
2. **Verētur nē hostēs locum occupent**, he fears that the enemy will get possession of the place.

3. **Timēbat nē amicum vulnerāret**, *he was afraid he might wound his friend.*
4. **Timēmus ut in urbem vēnerit**, *we fear he has not come to the city.*

Observe that in these sentences *ut* is translated with *not* and *nē* without it.

### 323. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

*Clauses after Quin.*

1. **Nōn dubitō quin amētur**, *I do not doubt that he is loved.*
2. **Nōn abest suspiciō quin vērum cēlet**, *the suspicion is not wanting that he is concealing the truth.*
3. **Nōn dubitāverunt quin vērum esset**, *they did not doubt that it was true.*
4. **Nōn dubium erat quin hostēs vēnissent**, *there was no doubt that the enemy had come.*

### 324. VOCABULARY.

<b>militia</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , military service.	<b>cōstituō</b> , -ere, -stitūī, -stitū-
<b>voluntās</b> , -ātis, <i>f.</i> , will, good will.	tum, arrange, decide.
<b>dignus</b> , -a, -um, worthy.	<b>proficīscor</b> , -ī, <b>profectus</b> , set out.
<b>dubius</b> , -a, -um, doubtful, (cf. Eng. dubious).	<b>contrā</b> ( <i>prep. with acc.</i> ), against.
	<b>quin</b> , <i>conj.</i> , that, but that.

### 325. EXERCISES.

- I. 1. **Nēmō dubitāre dēbet quin nostrī cīvēs prō patriā fortiter pūgnent.** 2. **Pater timet ut filius valeat.**
3. **Timēbat ut comes fidē dignus esset.** 4. **Nōn est dubium quin iuvenis fidē dignus sit.** 5. **Num potest quisquam dubitāre quin Ītalia poētārum et imperātōrum sit patria?**
6. **Suspiciō nōn abest quin Ītaliā remaneat ut militiam**



vītet. 7. Quaeris ā nōbīs cūr ita hōc homine dēlectēmur. 8. Cōstituit post mortem patris domum relinquere et in urbem ire. 9. Contrā voluntātem meam accidit ut ex urbe proficīscī parārem. 10. Pater filium domum relinquentem monuit ut malōs comitēs vītāret.

II. 1. We feared that Ariovistus intended<sup>1</sup> to remain. 2. It happened that I remained at home. 3. So great was the fear of our soldiers that they did not sustain the attack of the enemies' cavalry. 4. We will find out how many bridges over the Rhone remain. 5. He did not doubt that his neighbors were safe. 6. So great a change in affairs was made in a few months that his enemies were greatly frightened. 7. The lieutenant wished to lead his infantry across the bridge and encamp upon the hill. 8. He feared that his soldiers would not obey. 9. There is no doubt that my brother will be present. 10. The general fears that the minds and feelings of the recruits (new soldiers) will be disturbed by the approach of the enemy.

**326.**

## READING LESSON.

[CESAR, *Gallie War*, I. 48.]

Eōdem diē Ariovistus castra prōmōvit (*moved forward, prō and mōvit*) et milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub (*under, at the foot of*) monte cōnsēdit. Posterō diē praeter (*past*) Caesaris castra suās cōpiās dūxit et milibus passuum duōbus ūltrā (*beyond*) eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō ut frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduīs portārētur, Caesarem interclūderet (*shut off*). Ex eō diē diēs continuōs (*successive*) quīnque Caesar

<sup>1</sup> *Esset in animō.* Cf. *Orgetorigi in animō erat*, 171.

prō castris suās cōpiās ēdūxit ut Ariovistō potestātem pūgnandī (*of fighting*, gerund of *pūgnō*) daret. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equitātū cottidiē proelium commisit. Genus hōc erat pūgnae, quō sē Germānī exercuerant (*had trained*). Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem (*just so many*) numerō peditēs vėlōcissimī ac fortissimī. Cum hīs in proelia equitēs ibant. Ad eōs sē recipiebant. Hī in periculis equitēs iuvābant, et tanta erat eōrum celeritās ut nōn minus vėlōciter quam equī currerent.



## CHAPTER LVIII.

## Imperative Constructions.

*Wishes.*

**327.** Learn the present imperative of *amō*, *moneō*, *dūcō*, *audiō*, *volō*, *nōlō*.

**328.** Imperative constructions include all kinds of commands, requests, and permissions. The following are the most common:—

## POSITIVE.

## NEGATIVE.

- |    |   |  |
|----|---|--|
| 1. | <b>properem</b> , <i>let me hurry.</i>  | <b>nē properem</b> , <i>let me not hurry.</i>  |
| 2. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{properā}$ , <i>hurry,</i><br>or<br>$\textbf{properēs}$ , <i>you (one) must</i><br><i>hurry.</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{nōlī properāre}$ ,<br>or<br>$\textbf{nē properāveris}$ , |

POSITIVE.		NEGATIVE.	
3.	<b>properet,</b>	<b>nē properet,</b>	
	or	or	
	<b>properāverit,</b>	<b>nē properāverit,</b>	
	<i>let him hurry, or he shall hurry.</i>		<i>let him not hurry, or he shall not hurry.</i>

**329.** Commands, requests, and permissions are expressed by the subjunctive, except in the second person, and in the second person they may be expressed by the subjunctive.

1. The second person of the subjunctive in positive commands is rarely used except when the subject is *you* in the sense of *one* or *people*.

2. Negative commands of the second person are expressed by **nōli** (**nōlite**) with the present infinitive, or by the present or perfect subjunctive with **nē**.

3. Notice that in imperative sentences there is no difference in the translation between the present and the perfect subjunctive.

4. Notice that **nē** is the negative in imperative sentences.

### **330. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.**

**(Utinam) bonus sis,** *may you be good.*

**Utinam bonus essēs,** *would you were good.*

**Utinam bonus fuissēs,** *would you had been good.*

**(Utinam) nē malus sis,** *may you not be bad.*

**(Utinam) nē malus essēs,** *would you were not bad.*

**(Utinam) nē malus fuissēs,** *would you had not been bad.*

Notice that *utinam* is sometimes translated, and sometimes merely shows that the sentence in which it occurs is a wish. Notice, also, that *utinam* may usually be omitted in Latin. Notice that when the wish refers to the future the present

subjunctive, when it refers to the present the imperfect, and when it refers to the past the pluperfect, is used. When the wish refers to the present or past, it is unfulfilled. Compare the subjunctive in conditions, 337-340. Observe that the negative is *nē*.

**331. RULE.** — *Wishes are expressed by the subjunctive, often introduced by utinam. The negative is nē. Wishes referring to the future take the present tense, unfulfilled wishes referring to the present take the imperfect, and referring to the past the pluperfect.*

**332.**

## VOCABULARY.

<b>pecus</b> , -oris, <i>n.</i> , flock.	<b>cūrō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take
<b>antīquus</b> , -a, -um, ancient.	care, cause.
<b>nūllus</b> , -a, -um, no, no one.	<b>soleō</b> , -ēre, <b>solitus</b> , (semi-dep.)
<b>audeō</b> , -ēre, <b>ausus</b> , ( <i>dep. in perf., plup., and fut. perf.</i> ), dare.	be accustomed.
<b>cōgitō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think.	<b>trānseō</b> , -ire, -ii, -itum, ( <b>trāns</b> and <b>eō</b> ), go across, cross.
	<b>vīvō</b> , -ere, <b>vīxi</b> , <b>victum</b> , live.
	<b>utinam</b> , O that, would that.

**333.**

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Properā, mī fili, domum redīre.* 2. *Librōs, dīscipulī, domum vōbiscum nē portāveritis.* 3. *Nē quisquam hunc hostem timuerit.* 4. *Nōlī putāre mē ad quemquam longās epistulās scribere.* 5. *Cūrā ut vir dīgnus patre sis et cōgitā quō in locō stēs.* 6. *Semper audēte vēra dicere.* 7. *Nē solitī sītis hunc agrum trānsire.* 8. *Nūllī erat dubium quīn arma contrā Caesarem parārentur.* 9. *Antīquī Germānī nōn multum frūmentō sed māgnā ex parte<sup>1</sup> pecore vivēbant.* 10. *Nōn tam ācer cīvis sum ut putem mīlitiam esse semper grātam.* 11. *Dēbēmus ita*

<sup>1</sup> *In great part, largely.*

vivere ut aliis prōsimus. 12. Nē mīlitēs dē mortis periculō cōgitāverint. 14. Utinam māter adesset. 15. Utinam domī āfuissem.

II. 1. The minds of the soldiers were seized with so great fear that they were thrown into disorder. 2. The general feared that his speech might seem too long. 3. He decided to go (set out) to Britain to avoid wrong from (of) his enemies. 4. I do not doubt that the bridge is safe. 5. Send the boy home. 6. Do not send the boy home. 7. Let the soldiers avoid the suspicion of fear. 8. Let us not fear the enemy. 9. These boys so act that they are loved by everybody. 10. Cæsar had perceived the good will of Divitiacus towards himself. 11. He wished to drive his flock to a safe place. 12. No one<sup>1</sup> doubts that the ancient Germans were brave. 13. May they not dare to cross.



## CHAPTER LIX.

### Third Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive; Conditional Sentences.

**334.** Learn the subjunctive active and passive of *dūcō*.

#### **335.** ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

**SI** adest, laetī sumus, *if he is present, we are glad.*

**SI** aderat, laetī erāmus, *if he was present, we were glad.*

---

<sup>1</sup> See I. 8.

**SI** aderit, laetI erimus, *if he is (shall be) present, we shall be glad.*

**SI** adfuit, laetI fuimus, *if he was (has been) present, we were (have been) glad.*

Notice that each sentence consists of two clauses, — a condition introduced by *sī* (if), and a conclusion. The truth of the conclusion depends upon the truth of the condition. Such sentences are called *conditional sentences*.

Notice that in the sentences given above nothing is implied as to the truth of the assertions. It is simply stated that *if* the condition is (was, shall be) true, the conclusion is (was, shall be) true. Such conditions are called *simple conditions*. Notice the mood of the verbs.

Notice that in simple future conditions the future tense is used when in English we use the present.

NOTE. — Conditions referring to action completed in past time are in the pluperfect; as, **SI** adfuerat, *if he had (at some previous time) been present*. But these do not often occur.

Sometimes a future conclusion depends upon a condition which will already belong to past time when the conclusion shall or may become true; as, *If I come, I shall go back*. I evidently cannot go back until after I have come; the condition therefore refers to the past; but the whole sentence refers to the future, therefore the condition must refer to the past and the future at once, *i.e.* must be in the future perfect tense, **sī** vēnerō, redībō.

**336. RULE.** — *In simple conditional sentences the indicative is used in both condition and conclusion.*

### **337. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.**

**SI** aderit, laetI erimus, *if he is (shall be) present, we shall be glad.*

**SI** adsit laetI sImus, *if he should be present, we should be glad.*

Notice that these sentences refer to the future. The second differs from the first only in being *less vivid*, implying that the

speaker is in doubt, or is unwilling to make a plain, simple statement. Notice the moods and tenses. Compare 330, 331.

**338. RULE.** — *Less vivid future conditions take the present subjunctive in both clauses.*

**NOTE.** — The form of the less vivid condition corresponding to the future perfect indicative of the simple (more vivid) condition (see 335, note) is the perfect subjunctive, *sī vēnerim, redeam*, if I should come (have come), I should go back.

### 339. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

**SI adesset, laetī essēmus**, if he were present, we should be glad.

**SI adfuisset, laetī fuissēmus**, if he had been present, we should have been glad.

Notice that in these sentences the condition is supposed to be untrue. Such conditions are called *conditions contrary to fact*. Notice the mood and the tenses of the verbs. Compare 330, 331.

**340. RULE.** — *In conditions contrary to fact the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in both clauses, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past time.*

### 341. VOCABULARY.

**opus, operis, n.**, work.

**renūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, report, [*pref. re- + nūntiō*].

**resistō, -ere, restiti** (no supine), resist, [*pref. re- + sistō (reduplicated form from stō, stand)*].

<b>revertor, revertī, reversus sum,</b>	} return, go back. [ <i>re-again, + ver-tor, turn</i> ]. The deponent forms are used chiefly in the present, imperf. and fut., the active forms in the perf., pluperf., and fut. perf.
<b>revertō, -ere, -revertī, re-versum.</b>	

**quis, quae (qua), quid, indef. pron., any, any one, one.**

**qui, qua (quae), quod, indef. pron., any (see 226).**

**sī, conj., if.**

**nisi, conj., if not, unless, [nī (for nē) + sī (with shortened vowel)].**

## 342.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sī māgnū pecoris numerum in castris habent, inopiā superārī nōn possunt. 2. Sī revertētur ut nobis resistat, tertio diē pugnābimus. 3. Sī vērā captivus respondit, milites fortiter opus dēfendērunt. 4. Si tanta erat operis altitūdō, hostibus facile resistere poterant. 5. Lēgātus nisi interfectus erit, in Italiam revertētur ut cōsulī haec renūntiet. 6. Sī quis barbaris restitit, nōn dubium est quī interfectus sit. 7. Milites nisi castra dēfendere poterunt, nōn dubium est quī omnēs fugiant. 8. Sī flūmen trānsiit ut in oppidum fugeret, nōn dubitō quī vivat; sī domī remānsit, interfectus est. 9. Sī vērū est quod explōrātōrēs renūntiāvērunt, hostēs ad castra venīre nōn ausī sunt. 10. Sī equitēs Rhēnum trānsiērunt ut locī nātūrā cōgnōscerent, peditēs apud flūmen remānsērunt quī pontem dēfenderent.

II. 1. If one dares to resist, there is no danger. 2. No pain is so great that it cannot be borne if one wishes to bear it. 3. I do not doubt that the soldiers have returned to the work. 4. If you have determined to go against the enemy, you ought to think of the safety of the flocks. 5. If any dare not remain, let them return<sup>1</sup> home. 6. If the soldiers have not fled, the enemy have not taken the camp. 7. If you wish (use *volō*), you may return on the

---

<sup>1</sup> In Latin, as in English, the conclusion of a conditional sentence sometimes takes the form of a command, which must be expressed by the proper part of the verb. See Chapter LVIII.



fifth day. 8. The ancient Romans were accustomed to bear the toil of military service with the greatest goodwill in order that they might deserve (be worthy) to be praised. 9. May you take care to answer truly (true things). 10. If you do not dare to resist the enemy, I fear you are not worthy to return to military service. 11. If any are accustomed to think of their own safety, they are not worthy to be called soldiers.

III. 1. Nisi māgnū pecoris numerum in castrīs habuissent, inopiā victī essent. 2. Sī quis nobīs resistere audēbit, interficiētur. 3. Imperātor sī in castra revertātur, summā militum voluntāte contrā hostēs proficiēscātur. 4. Caesar sī adfuisset, pūgnāvisset; sī pūgnāvisset, hostēs superāvisset; sī hostēs superāvisset, Galliam occupāvisset. 5. Sī dignus essēs quī Rōmānus appellārēris, hostibus resisterēs. 6. Nisi quis dē hostium adventū nūntiāvisset, castra nostra capta essent. 7. Captīvus nisi vērā respondisset, statim ā militibus interfectus esset. 8. Nisi Labiēnus ante sōlis occāsum revertātur, militēs longō labōre dēfessī dē dēditione cōgitent. 9. Militēs sī statim ē castrīs ēdūcantur, hostibus fortiter resistant. 10. Sī ante nōnam hōram in urbem cōsul vēnerit, primā noctis vigiliā contrā hostēs ire contendēmus. 11. Utinam nē cum Germānīs proelium commisisset.

IV. 1. If we do not take possession of the bridge, we shall not be able to cross the river. 2. If the soldiers who were in the town had not been frightened, they would not have fled. 3. If you should try to avoid death, you would not deserve (be worthy) to be called brave. 4. The forces of the enemy are so great that they would take the town if our men were not resisting

bravely. 5. If the place had not been surrounded by a wall, we should not have dared to remain. 6. If the Romans had not been tired by (their) work, they would have remained at the bridge to resist the Germans. 7. We shall not be able to return to camp unless some one comes to aid us (to us as an aid) before sunset. 8. If the foot-soldiers should run quickly to the river, they would seize the bridge. 9. If the general had not led out the soldiers from the camp into line of battle, the enemy would have set out for home on that day. 10. If the Gauls should make an attack upon our men, they would betake themselves to the camp.

## 343.

## READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, I. 49.]

Ubi (*when*) Ariovistum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellexit, nē diūtius (compar. of *diū*) commeātū prohibērētur, ūltrā (*beyond*) eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant circiter passūs sēscentōs ab eis, castris idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici (*triple*) instructā (perf. pass. part. of *instruō*)<sup>1</sup> ad eum locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iūssit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sēscentōs, uti (*as*) dictum est, aberat. Eō (*thither*) circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedita (*unencumbered, in fighting trim*) cum omni equitātū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpiæ nostrōs terrērent et mūnitiōne (*from fortification*)

<sup>1</sup> *Acie triplici instructā*, a triple line being drawn up, i.e. having formed a triple line. So below, *mūnitis castris*, the camp having been fortified, i.e. when the camp was fortified. See Chapter LXII., Ablative Absolute.

prohibērent. Caesar, ut (*as*) ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre (*drive off*), tertiam castra mūnīre iūssit. Castris mūnītis<sup>1</sup> duās ibi (*there*) legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit (*led back*).



## CHAPTER LX.

### Fourth Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive.

#### *Clauses with Cum.*

**344.** Learn the subjunctive active and passive of *audiō*.

#### **345.** ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

*cum cīvitās bellum infert, ducēs dēliguntur*, when the state begins a war, leaders are chosen.

*cum haec legēs, aderō*, when you read (i.e. shall read) this, I shall be present.

*oppidum Britannī vocant, cum silvās mūniērunt*, the Britons call it a town, when they have fortified the woods.

*cum vēneris, cōgnōscēs*, when you come (i.e. shall have come), you will find out.

Observe the mood and tenses.

**346. RULE.** — *Cum* meaning when (*cum* temporal) takes the indicative to define a time.

---

<sup>1</sup> See p. 171, note.

## 347. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

**cum esset Caesar in Galliā, lēgātī vērērunt**, *when Cæsar was in Gaul, envoys came.*

**Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, ab urbe profectus est**, *when that was (i.e. had been) announced to Cæsar, he set out from the city.*

**348. RULE.** — *In narrative, cum meaning when or as (cum historical) takes the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to describe a time.*

NOTE. — The indicative is used with **cum** when a *date* is given, the subjunctive when a *situation or circumstance* is given involving the idea of time. Generally dates are given in primary tenses, and therefore **cum** with the imperfect and pluperfect indicative is rare. When a time is *described*, the tenses used are naturally secondary, hence the use of the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive with **cum** in narrative.

## 349. VOCABULARY.

**Britannus**, -i, *m.*, a Briton, inhabitant of Britain.

**magistrātus**, -ūs, *m.*, magistrate, magistracy [*stem of magister (master) + a (as if from a verb of first conj.) + tus*].

**mūnitiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification [*mūni (of mūniō) + tiō*].

**cum**, *conj.*, when, as, since, although.

**tamen**, *conj.*, nevertheless, still, however.

**contendō**, -ere, -tendi, -tentum, contend, struggle, hasten [*pref. con + tendō, stretch*].

**pervenīō**, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, come through, arrive [*per + veniō*].

**vincō**, -ere, -vici, -victum, conquer.

## 350. EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Ad amīcōs, cum ūsus est, Gallī sē recipiunt.
2. Caesar cum Helvētiōs vicisset, multōs annōs cum aliis bellum gerēbat.
3. Helvētii cum omnia cōstituissent, Orgetorīgē ducem dēlēgērunt.
4. Ille cum dux

dēlēctus esset, Dumnorīgem addūxit ut rēgnum occupāre cōnārētur. 5. Cum magistrātus multitudinem hominum ex agrīs cōgerent, Orgetorīgis mors eis nūntiātā est. 6. Barbarī cum oppidum cēpērunt, incolās interficiunt. 7. Dux cum hostēs vīcerit exercitum dīmittet nisi ei ā senātū imperātum erit ut cum Germānīs bellum gerat. 8. Sī vīs domum revertī, cūrā ut respondeās. 9. Ea rēs cum imperātōrī renūntiāta esset, in castrīs militēs dēfessōs continuisset nisi veritus esset nē Germānī ad Rhēnum pervenīrent. 10. Britannī antīquī pecoribus et frūmentō vīvere solēbant. 11. Sī hostēs dē periculō cōgitant, nūlli flūmen trānsīre audēbunt.

II. 1. When the soldiers heard the shout, they hastened into the city. 2. When the enemy had fortified the camp, they led out their forces into line of battle. 3. If the work of the fortification is done, cross the river and resist the enemy. 4. When the general himself heard the enemy coming, he gave the signal to the soldiers. 5. When an army arrives at a suitable place for a camp, they surround themselves with a fortification that they may be safe from the attack of the enemy. 6. When the shout of (those) fighting was heard in the camp, the soldiers hastened to the river. 7. When the camp had been fortified, the magistrates of the Gauls returned to Labienus to ask for (seek) peace. 8. Do not resist the enemy, lest they hasten to cross the Rhine and return home. 9. When the cavalry return, they will quickly make an end of the battle. 10. When the Helvetians had already made their way through the territory of the Sequanians, they arrived in the territory of our allies.

**351. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.**

**cum haec vĕra sint, bene est,** *since these things are true, it is well.*

**cum dĕfessus essem, domī manēbam,** *since I was tired, I staid at home.*

**cum adessem, mē nōn vīdistī,** *although I was present, you did not see me.*

**hōc cum audierim, nōn crēdō,** *although I have heard this, I do not believe it.*

**352. RULE.** — *Cum* causal and concessive (meaning since and although) takes the subjunctive in all tenses.

**353.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Militēs cum proeliō superātī essent, tamen nōn fūgērunt. 2. Hostēs cum dux interfectus esset in castra sē recēpērunt. 3. Cum māgna pars aestātis reliqua sit, in Britanniam profectus est. 4. Cum vīvāmus, laetī sīmus. 5. Cum vēnerit nūntius novās rēs cōgnōscēmus. 6. Explōrātor cum multās rēs repperisset tamen nihil renūntiāre ausus est. 7. Haec cum bene fēcisset, laudātus est. 8. Dux cum multa bene fēcisset, tamen ab inimicīs accūsātus est. 9. Cum timōris sūspiciōnem vitāveris fortem esse tē dicimus. 10. Militēs, cum nēmō sine vulnere esset, tamen ad noctem resistēbant.

II. 1. Although he was of small stature (body), he was a brave general. 2. Since he had arrived at the city, he determined to remain. 3. Since the magistrates have come, let us hasten to go to the council. 4. Although the Britons have been conquered, I shall not return to Gaul. 5. Since the fortifications are high, we can easily resist the enemy. 6. Since you have come to

me, I will lead you to a safe place. 7. Although the soldiers are fighting sharply, they cannot overcome the enemy. 8. Since a great change of circumstances (things) has been brought about (made), let us seek safety in flight. 9. Although Cæsar had led out his legions into line of battle, the enemy remained in their camp. 10. Since the Gauls did not come against us, we returned into the fortifications.



## CHAPTER LXI.

### Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs.

#### *Indirect Discourse.*

**354.** Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of *possum*, *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *eō*, *fiō*, and *ferō*.

Review the rules for simple indirect discourse (p. 119).

#### **355.**

#### VOCABULARY.

**imperium**, -i, *n.*, command, rule, power, sway, [**imper** (of **imperō**, command) + abstract ending -ium].

**porta**, -ae, *f.*, gate.

**pūgna**, -ae, *f.*, fight, battle.

**turris**, -is (*acc.* -im), *f.*, tower.

**etiam**, *conj.*, even, also, [et + iam].

**cōnficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-tum, finish, wear out (*esp. in perf. pass. partic.*) [con + faciō].

**existimō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think, consider, [ēx + aestimō, compute (*ae weakened to ī*)].

## 356.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nūntius respondit turrim iam cōfectam esse. 2. Sī scribere potuisset, Britannōs ad urbis portam ventūrōs esse scrīpsisset. 3. Etiam cum ē mūnitiōne exirēmus, hostēs pūgnātūrōs esse nōn existimābāmus. 4. Caesarī renūntiābātur militēs vulneribus iam cōfectōs esse. 5. Caesar cum cōgnōvisset Britannōs iam victōs esse, ad castra mūnitiōnēsq̄ue pervēnīre contendit. 6. Galli etiam sī Caesaris imperium ferre nōluissent, ~~tamen~~ resistere nōn potuissent. 7. Sī celeriter castra fiant hostibus resistere possīmus. 8. Nisi ad opus revertī quam in pūgnā manēre māluissētis facile hostēs vicissētis. 9. Lēgātus dicēbat sē tertiō diē ad suōs ventūrum esse. 10. Sī quis dicet sē pūgnam vīdisse, respondē pūgnam neque fuisse neque futūram esse.

II. 1. I saw that the Gauls were resisting; had resisted; would resist. 2. If you did not bear the toils of war, I should not say that you were brave. 3. If he had not been willing to go, he would not have gone. 4. Even if they thought that their allies were brave, they would wish to defend themselves with a fortification. 5. When he had seen that the magistrates were present, he said that he would reply immediately. 6. The messenger replied that the enemy had run to the gates and (*atque*) had seized even the tower. 7. They say that they cannot endure the rule of the Romans. 8. They announced that the foot-soldiers would seize the gates. 9. When they saw that the hill had been seized by the enemy, they understood that they were conquered. 10. If you think that the place is suitable for a camp, let us go thither.



## 357.

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. DIRECT. **SI** quid vīs, cūr nōn venīs ad mē? *If you want anything, why do you not come to me?*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Amīcus tuus respondet, si quid vellis, cūr nōn veniās ad sē,** *your friend replies, if you want anything, why don't you come to him.*

(secondary tense). **Caesar respondit, si quid Ariovistus vellet, cūr nōn venīret ad sē,** *Cæsar replied, if Ariovistus wanted anything, why did he not come to him.*

2. DIRECT. **Veni si vīs,** *come, if you wish.*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Amīcus tuus dīcit, veniās si vellis,** *your friend says (that) you may come if you wish.*

(secondary tense). **Caesar dīxit Ariovistus venīret si vellet,** *Cæsar said (that) Ariovistus might come if he wished.*

3. DIRECT. **SI** aderat Titus, puer bene fēcit, *If Titus was present, the boy did well.*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Dīcō si adfuerit Titus bene puerum fēcisse,** *I say that if Titus was present, the boy did well.*

(secondary tense). **Dīxi si adfuisset Titus bene puerum fēcisse,** *I said that if Titus was present, the boy did well (at some time before I said it).*

4. DIRECT. **Cum** Titus adest, puer bene facit, *when Titus is present, the boy does well.*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Dīcō cum Titus adsit bene puerum facere,** *I say that when Titus is present, the boy does well.*

(secondary tense). **Dīxi cum Titus adesset bene puerum facere,** *I said that when Titus was present, the boy did well.*

Notice the moods. Notice also how the tenses differ in the different sentences. Observe that the first and second persons of the Direct Discourse are usually changed (in Latin as in English) to the third person in the Indirect Discourse.

**358. RULE.** — *In Indirect Discourse, questions, commands, and subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive.*

**359. RULE.** — *If the verb of saying, etc., introducing the Indirect Discourse is in a primary tense, the subjunctives are present or perfect; if it is in a secondary tense, the subjunctives are imperfect or pluperfect.*

**NOTE.** — As the subjunctive lacks the future and future perfect tenses, the future indicative of the Direct Discourse is represented by the present or imperfect subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, and the future perfect indicative by the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive. So *sī aderō, bene erit*, if I am (i.e. shall be) present, it will be well, becomes, if quoted indirectly, *dīcit sī adsit bene futūrum esse*, he says that if he is present, it will be well, or (using a secondary tense) *dixit sī adesset bene futūrum esse*.

### 360.

### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dux existimāvit milītēs, sī vellent, vincere posse. 2. Vōbīs dīcō, sī laudārī velītis, fortēs sītis. 3. Magistrātūs dīxērunt Caesarem sī Britannōs vīcisset in Galliam reversūrum esse. 4. Magistrātūī nūntiatum est omnēs hostium legiōnēs in Ītaliā revertisse. 5. Dux militibus dīxit, sī hostibus resistere vellent, mūnitiōnēs cōficierent. 6. Nūntiātum est portam, cum Labiēnus ad mūnitiōnēs pervēnisset, iam occupātam esse ā Gallīs. 7. Lēgātus intellēxit peditēs in castra sē receptūrōs esse nisi quis auxiliō eīs venīret. 8. Centuriōnibus dīxit, cum mūnitiōnēs iam cōfectae essent, castrīs milītēs continērent. 9. Imperātor, cum hiemem iam adesse cōgnōvisset, in hiberna legiōnēs dūxit. 10. Nūntiātum est hostēs, cum

vincere nōn potuissent, primā vigiliā salūtem fugā petītūrōs esse.

II. 1. Fight bravely if you wish to be praised. 2. The general said that the soldiers must fight bravely if they wished to be praised. 3. When the messenger had arrived at the town he went to the magistrates. 4. He told the magistrates that when the camp was taken the Gauls had sought safety in flight. 5. The magistrates replied, that since the Gauls had been conquered, they would receive the Romans in (into) the city. 6. When the messenger had returned to the army, he reported that the magistrates would not resist. 7. Having heard this, the general said that he should move the camp at daybreak, since he had done all (the things) on account of which he had come. 8. He thought that, since the leaders of the enemy had been slain, his soldiers would be safe in the city. 9. When the army had been led into the city, the general called the magistrates to him. 10. He said that since they had received him and his soldiers in the city, he counted (held, *habēre*) them in the number of his friends.

## 361.

## READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, I. 50, 51.]

Proximō diē Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra Caesaris minōra oppugnāret, misit. Diū atque ācrit̄er pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus in castra redūxit (*led back*). Cum ex captivīs Caesar quaereret quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō contendere nōn vellet, hanc reperiēbat causam: apud Germānōs eam cōnsuetūdinem (*custom*) esse, ut matrēsfamiliae (*matrons*) eōrum sortibus (*by lots*) et vāticinātiōnibus (*by*

*prophecies*) *dēclārārent* (*dēclārō, declare*) *utrum* (*whether*) *proelium* *committere* *dēbērent* *necne* (*or not*); *eās* *ita* *dīcere*: *Germānōs* *superātūrōs* *nōn* *esse*, *sī* *ante* *novam* *lūnam* *proeliō* *contendissent*. *Posterō* *diē* *Caesar* *prae-*  
*sidium* *castrīs* *reliquit* (*left*); *ipse* *triplici* *aciē* *instrūctā*  
(see note on last reading lesson) *ad* *castra* *hostium* *accēs-*  
*sit* (*went close up*). *Germānī* *coāctī* *sunt* *cōpiās* *suās*  
*castrīs* *ēdūcere*. *Omnem* *aciem* *carrīs* *circumdedērunt*,  
*nē* *qua* *spēs* (*hope*) *fugae* *relinquerētur*. *In* *carrīs* *mulie-*  
*rēs* *stābant* *quae* *eōs* *hortābantur* *ut* *fortiter* *pūgnārent*.



## CHAPTER LXII.

## Participles. (Review.)

*Ablative Absolute.*

**362.** Review the participles and their declensions (p. 128).

**363.** ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

- |  |   |  |   |                             |
|--|---|--|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. <b>duce</b> <b>vocante</b><br><b>militēs</b> <b>con-</b><br><b>veniunt,</b>             | { | the leader calling,<br>when the leader calls,<br>at the call of the leader,  | } | the soldiers assem-<br>ble. |
| 2. <b>Caesar</b> <b>bellō</b><br><b>cōnfectō</b> <b>in</b><br><b>castra</b> <b>rediit,</b> | { | the war having been fin-<br>ished,<br>when (or after) the war<br>was finished,<br>since the war was fin-<br>ished,<br>having finished the war, | } | Cæsar returned to<br>camp.  |

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| 3. <b>equitibus fugientibus pedites interfecti sunt,</b> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the horsemen fleeing,} \\ \text{when the horsemen fled,} \\ \text{since the horsemen fled,} \\ \text{on account of the flight} \\ \text{of the horsemen,} \end{array} \right\}$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the foot-soldiers} \\ \text{were slain.} \end{array} \right\}$ |
| 4. <b>hōc factō conveniēmus,</b>                         | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{this having been done,} \\ \text{when this has been done,} \\ \text{after doing this,} \end{array} \right\}$  | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{we shall assemble.} \end{array} \right\}$                      |
| 5. <b>eō duce hostēs vicistis,</b>                       | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{he being leader,} \\ \text{when he was leader,} \\ \text{under his leadership,} \\ \text{with him as leader,} \end{array} \right\}$   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{you conquered the} \\ \text{enemy.} \end{array} \right\}$      |
| 6. <b>parte aetātis reliquā domo exibunt,</b>            | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{part of the summer re-} \\ \text{maining,} \\ \text{since part of the sum-} \\ \text{mer remains,} \\ \text{if part of the summer} \\ \text{remains,} \end{array} \right\}$     | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{they will go out} \\ \text{from home.} \end{array} \right\}$   |

Notice that in 1, 2, 3, and 4 a noun (or pronoun) and a participle in agreement with it are put in the ablative to designate the time or circumstances of the action expressed by the main verb. The place of the participle may be taken by a noun (*duce* in 5) or an adjective (*reliquā* in 6). The ablative used in this way is called the *ablative absolute*.

**364. RULE.** — *The ablative absolute is used to designate the time or circumstances of an action.*

**365.** In the use of the ablative absolute the following things are to be observed: —

1. The noun in the ablative is never the same as the subject or object of the main verb. If we wish to say in Latin, *the leader*

*fled, having been defeated*, we must say **dux victus fugit**, for *leader* is the subject of *fled*, therefore *dux* must be the subject of *fugit*, and the subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative; then *having been defeated* modifies *leader*, therefore *victus* must modify *dux*, and must therefore be in the same case as *dux*, that is, in the nominative.

2. The ablative absolute may be translated in various ways; as (a), by the English absolute construction (**bellō cōnfectō**, *the war having been finished*); (b) by a temporal clause (**bellō cōnfectō**, *when the war was finished*); (c) by a concessive clause (**bellō cōnfectō**, *although the war was finished*); (d) by a condition (**bellō cōnfectō**, *if the war was finished*); (e) by various expressions suited to the sentence in which the ablative absolute stands (so **bellō cōnfectō**, *at the end of the war*, or *on the completion of the war*).

3. The ablative absolute is often used in Latin where an independent co-ordinate verb would be used in English; as, **Caesar, bellō cōnfectō, domum rediit**, *Cæsar finished the war and returned home*.

4. In Latin there is no perfect active participle. If therefore we wish to say in Latin, *Cæsar, having finished the war, returned to camp*, we cannot use, as in English, a participle in agreement with *Cæsar*, but instead, **Caesar, bellō cōnfectō, in castra rediit**. The same idea may, of course, be expressed by a clause with **cum**; as, **Caesar, cum bellum cōnfecisset in castra rediit**. Deponent verbs have the perfect participle, and therefore offer no difficulty in translation. Thus *Cæsar, having exhorted the soldiers, led them against the enemy* can be translated **Caesar militēs cohortātus contrā hostēs dūxit**.

5. In Latin there is no present passive participle and no future passive participle. When an English sentence contains one of these participles, the idea must be expressed in Latin by a clause with **cum** (or some other conjunction) or the voice must be changed to the active.

## 366.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis-</b> <b>sum, let go, lose, [ā +</b> <b>mittō].</b>	<b>persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suā-</b> <b>sum, persuade, induce, [per</b> <b>+ suādeō, urge].</b>
<b>arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum,</b> <b>think, suppose, believe.</b>	<b>satis, adv., enough.</b>
<b>efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,</b> <b>effect, accomplish, [ec (for</b> <b>ex, changed to ef before</b> <b>following f) + faciō].</b>	<b>spēs, speī, f., hope, expectation.</b> <b>sub, prep. usually with abl., but</b> <b>after verbs of motion with</b> <b>acc., under, close to, at the</b> <b>foot of.</b>

## 367.

## EXERCISES.

[Translate each ablative absolute in as many ways as you can.]

I. 1. *Omni spē āmissā Britannī ad mūnitiōnēs pervenire contendērunt.* 2. *His rēbus cōfectis magistrātūs cīvibus persuāsērunt ut domō exirent.* 3. *Caesar Britannīs victis satis sē effēcisse arbitrātus est.* 4. *Militēs satis sē effectūrōs existimābant sī pūgnā hostēs vincerent.* 5. *Hostēs turri occupātā etiam ad castrōrum portam ire contendērunt.* 6. *Aedui dixerunt sē Caesaris imperia sustentūrōs esse sī Germānōs Rhēnum trānsire prohiberet.* 7. *Galli, cum tēla āmisissent, dēditiōnem facere voluērunt.* 8. *Hōc Caesarī nūntiātō respondit sī vellet Ariovistus in colloquium venire, veniret.* 9. *Hostibus ācriter sub mūrō pūgnantibus multī interfectī sunt.* 10. *Caesare imperātōre Rōmānī tōtius Galliae imperiō potītī sunt.*

[Translate each sentence in at least two ways.]

II. 1. *Since the tower was finished, he thought the camp was sufficiently fortified.* 2. *Since all hope was lost, they fled into the woods.* 3. *Leaving all their villages, the Helvetians tried to make a journey through the*

territory of the Sequanians. 4. He persuaded the citizens to leave the towns and hasten into the provinces. 5. Even though their javelins were lost, nevertheless they fought long and sharply with their swords. 6. We have learned that when Gaul had been conquered by Cæsar, the Britons lived long under the power of the Roman people. 7. Thinking that enough had been accomplished, since the towers and the gates had been finished, he returned with his legions into the camp. 8. When Cæsar wished to return to Rome, after finishing the war, he left the cohorts in winter quarters. 9. I do not think that the general will return to the city if the legions are lost. 10. Even if the Britons should wish to fight after the loss of their leaders, the magistrates would persuade them to remain in their fortifications.



## CHAPTER LXIII.

### Gerund and Gerundive.

**368.** Learn the gerund and gerundive of *amō*, *habēō*, *dūcō*, *audiō*, and *eō*.

Notice that the gerund is declined as a neuter singular noun of the second declension, lacking the nominative and vocative cases, and that the gerundive is declined as a regular adjective of the first and second declensions.

The gerund is a *verbal noun*, the gerundive a *verbal adjective*.





**371. RULE.** — *The gerund is, as a noun, governed by other words; as a verb, it may take an object in the proper case.*

Notice that the *gerundive* agrees with its noun like any other adjective. The noun itself is in the case required by the noun, adjective, or other word upon which it depends.

It is only when the gerund would take an object in the accusative that the gerundive can be used instead. The two constructions are both admissible in the genitive; in the other cases, the gerundive is usual.

**372. RULE.** — *Instead of the gerund with a direct object, the gerundive is generally used. The gerundive agrees in gender, number, and case with its noun, which stands in the case in which the gerund would have been.*

**373.****VOCABULARY.**

**apertus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, open,  
[*perf. pass. partic. of aper-*  
**riō**, open].

**cōsistō**, **cōsistere**, **cōstitī**,  
no *supine*, stand together,  
stand firm, stop, halt, [**cōn**  
+ **sistō** (*reduplicated form*  
from **stō**, stand)].

**cōspiciō**, -**spicere**, -**spexī**,  
-**spectum**, spy, see, behold,  
[con + **spic** (*for spec*, a  
root denoting sight) + **iō**].

**ibī**, *adv.*, there.

**imperō**, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, com-  
mand, order, *used with the*  
*dat. of the person to whom*  
*the command is given followed*  
*by ut or nē with the subjunc-*  
*tive.*

**retineō**, -**ēre**, -**tinuī**, -**tentum**,  
hold back, retain, [**re**, back;  
**teneō**, hold].

**scūtum**, -**i**, *n.*, shield.

**374.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Scūtis āmissis tamen cōstitērunt ad portam dēfendendam. 2. Dixerunt ibi sē mānsūrōs esse ubi ad castra dēfendenda cōstitissent. 3. Centuriōnibus imperāvit ut dē turribus cōficiendīs cōgitārent. 4. Amicō

nostrō persuādeāmus nē spem oppidī capiendī āmittat. 5. Satis effectum esse arbītror sī lēgātī ad pācem petendam missī sunt. 6. Cum nostrōs ad pūgnam convenientēs cōspexissent, tempus pūgnandī vēnisse exīstimāvērunt. 7. Etiam sub imperiō Populī Rōmānī, Gallī retinērī nōn poterant nē inter sē contenderent. 8. Hīs rēbus factīs nostrī ad flūmen trānseundum profectī sunt. 9. Helvētīī dē itinere per Sēquanōrum finēs faciendō ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt. 10. Hīs ille respondit sē nūllī potestātem itineris per prōvinciam faciendī datūrum esse.

II. 1. This place is not suitable for fortifying a camp. 2. When the gate was opened, he commanded us to go against the enemy. 3. Having seized the mountain, they halted there to wait (for waiting) for the general. 4. When they beheld the legions going out from the camp, they thought that an opportunity of making an attack was offered (given). 5. They placed towers at the gates for defending the town. 6. Although all hope of taking the town was lost, still they did not flee, but remained there all night. 7. When the general commanded them to halt there, they did not obey the command. 8. He said many things about taking cities and conquering enemies. 9. If you should say anything about making peace, you would lose the friendship of the consul. 10. Cæsar crossed into Britain to find out (for finding out) the customs of the Britons.

## 375.

## READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, I. 52, 53.]

Caesar ā dextrō cornū, quod (*because*) eam partem minimē firmam (*strong*) hostium animadverterat, proe-

lium commisit. Ita acriter nostri in hostēs signō datō impetum fecerunt itaque celeriter hostēs prōcurrerunt (*ran forward*) ut spatium (*room, space*) pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Gladiis pūgnātum est diū atque acriter. Tandem Germānī victī fūgerunt, neque prius<sup>1</sup> fugere dēstitērunt (perf. of *dēsistō, cease*) quam<sup>1</sup> ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi paucī flūmine trānsitō sibi salutē repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus. Reliquōs omnēs equitātus noster interfēcit. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, quae in eā fugā periērunt (*perished*). Duārum filiārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. Gāius Valerius Proculus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā traherētur (*trahō, -ere, drag*) in ipsum Caesarem incidit, et Mārcus Metius repertus et ad eum reductus (*brought back*) est.



## CHAPTER LXIV.

### Supine.

#### *Expressions of Purpose.*

**376.** Learn the supines of the regular and irregular verbs.

#### **377.** ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

vēnērunt aquam petītum, *they came to seek water.*

missus est rem rēnditiātum, *he was sent to report the matter.*

---

<sup>1</sup> prius . . . quam, *sooner . . . than, i.e. until.*

**378. RULE.** — *The supine in -um (accusative supine) is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

**NOTE.**—The most frequent use of the supine in -um is with the verb *eo*, especially with the impersonal infinitive passive; as, *amātum iri*. This is the simplest way of forming the future infinitive passive. (For a more usual way of expressing the idea of the future infinitive passive, see the following chapter.)

**379.** Other ways of expressing purpose have already been given. *They came to seek water* may be expressed as follows:—

*vērērunt ut aquam peterent* (*ut* and the subjunctive, 311).

*vērērunt quī aquam peterent* (relative and the subjunctive, 311).

*vērērunt ad aquam petendam* (gerundive with *ad*, 370).

*vērērunt aquam petītum* (accusative supine as above).

Instead of the gerundive with *ad* the gerund may be used, but only when the verb is intransitive; as, *vērērunt ad mihi respondendum*, *they came to reply to me*.

**380.** Purpose may also be expressed by the gerund or gerundive in the genitive followed by *causā* (or *grātiā*), *for the sake of*:—

*vērērunt aquam petendī causā (grātiā).*

*vērērunt aquae petendae causā (grātiā).*

*Causā* and *grātiā* are the ablatives of *causa*, *cause*, and *grātia*, *favor*, *influence*. They are used with the genitive as prepositions are used with the accusative and ablative, but when so used they are *always placed after the genitive*.

**381.** The future participle is also occasionally used to express purpose; as, *vērērunt aquam petītūrī*, *they came about to seek water*, i.e. *they came to seek water*.

What are eight ways of expressing purpose in Latin?

**382. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.***facile est factū, it is easy to do.**difficile est dictū, it is hard to tell.*

**383. RULE.** — *The supine in -ū (ablative supine) is used with adjectives (and a few other words) to limit their meaning.*

**384. VOCABULARY.**

**grātia**, -ae, *f.*, influence, favor  
(*abl. grātiā* for the sake of,  
with *gen. like causā*).

**quantus**, -a, -um, *adj., rel. and*  
*inter.*, how great.

**animadvertō**, -ere, -ī, -sum,  
notice, perceive, [*anim* (*of*  
*animus*)+*ad*+*vertō* (*turn*)  
*turn the mind to*].

**coniciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum,  
throw together, hurl together,  
[*con*+*iaciō*].

**pellō**, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsum**,  
repel, repulse, defeat.

**nam**, *conj.*, for.

**quidem**, indeed, at least, *espe-*  
*cially* **nē . . . quidem**, not  
even.

**385. EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Hōc animadversō Caesar imperāvit ut ibi cōn-  
sisterent. 2. Incrēdibile dictū est quantā celeritāte ad  
tēla conicienda convēnissent. 3. Orgetorix apud Helvē-  
tiōs plūrimum valēbat grātiā et animī māgnitūdine, nam  
nihil esse arbitrātī sunt quod efficere nōn posset.  
4. Galli nē scūtīs quidem āmissīs omnem spem āmī-  
sērunt. 5. Helvētiī proeliō pulsī lēgātōs ad Caesarem  
pācem petītum mīsērunt. 6. Cum Procillum venientem  
cōnspexisset portā apertā ad eum contendit. 7. Lēgātōs,  
quī ad pācem petendam vēnerant, apud sē retinuit nē  
domum reverterentur. 8. Nam verēbātur nē, sī domum  
revertissent, Gallīs persuādērent ut ad impetum in castra  
faciendum convenirent. 9. Mihi quidem satis erit sī bene

ac celeriter eas res confeceritis ad quas conficiendas vos convocavi. 10. Hoc si optimum factum est faciamus. 11. Haec quidem dicere volebam ut intellexeretis. Sed satis dictum est.

[Translate the purpose clauses in various ways.]

II. 1. Let us go to seek aid. I think this is the best (thing) to do. 2. When he had noticed that the Gauls had hurled their javelins, he ordered his (men) to make a charge. 3. Not even when the enemy were repulsed did he dare to halt there. 4. When the leaders of the enemy perceived this, they encouraged (strengthened the spirits of) their men to fight. 5. We have come to you, not to fight, but to make peace. 6. Caesar had great influence among the Gauls, for they understood how great his power was. 7. Those who had been sent to learn the nature of the place, reported that it was suitable for making a camp. 8. Scouts came for the purpose of seeing the army and reporting to their chiefs. 9. Having noticed this, Caesar retained them in the camp. 10. Envoys were sent to the general to seek peace, in order to put (make) an end to (of) the war. 11. The general replied to them that he had come to conquer the Gauls. 12. Having heard this, the chiefs of the Gauls called their (men) together and encouraged them to fight.

## CHAPTER LXV.

## Periphrastic Conjugations.

*Dative of Agent.*

**386.** Examine the following:—

PRES.	<b>amātūrus sum</b> , <i>I am about to love (or, I am going to love).</i>
IMPERF.	<b>amātūrus eram</b> , <i>I was about to love.</i>
FUT.	<b>amātūrus erō</b> , <i>I shall be about to love.</i>
PERF.	<b>amātūrus fui</b> , <i>I have been (was) about to love.</i>
PLUPERF.	<b>amātūrus fueram</b> , <i>I had been about to love.</i>
FUT. PERF.	<b>amātūrus fuerō</b> , <i>I shall have been about to love.</i>

The future active participle is combined in this way with all the moods and tenses of **sum**. The combination is called the *First Periphrastic Conjugation*. The tenses are called *present*, *imperfect*, etc., according to the tense of **sum** employed.

The future active participle of any verb, with the present indicative of **sum**, has substantially the same meaning as the future active indicative. The two expressions, **amābō** and **amātūrus sum**, are equivalents. But for the other forms given above, there are no simple equivalents.

**387.** ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

**nōn dubitō quā amātūrus sit**, *I do not doubt that he will (is about to) love.*

**quaesivī quid factūrus esset**, *I asked what he was going to do.*

Notice that the First Periphrastic Conjugation supplies a future tense for the subjunctive mood.



The regular future active infinitive (as *amātūrus esse*) is evidently a part of the First Periphrastic Conjugation, being formed of the future active participle and the infinitive of *sum*.

The future passive infinitive is also frequently formed with the aid of *sum*. For this purpose, the future infinitive of *sum* is used; but the form employed is almost invariably *fore*, not *futūrum esse*. When thus used, *fore* is followed by *ut* and the subjunctive; as, —

*crēdō fore ut amētur*, *I believe that he will be loved (that it will be or will come to pass that he is loved).*

*putābam fore ut liber scriberētur*, *I thought that the book would be written (that it would be or would come to pass that the book was written).*

The future infinitive passive in Indirect Discourse is usually formed in this way.

### 388. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

**PRES.** *amandus sum*, *I am to be loved, I ought to (must) be loved, it is necessary that I be loved.*

**IMPERF.** *amandus eram*, *I was to be loved, I ought to have been loved, it was necessary that I be loved.*

**FUT.** *amandus erō*, *I ought (hereafter) to be loved, it will be necessary that I be loved.*

**PERF.** *amandus fui*, *I have been (was) to be loved, I ought to have been loved, it was necessary that I be loved.*

The other moods (except the imperative) and tenses of *sum* are also used in combination with the gerundive, forming the *Second Periphrastic Conjugation*.

Observe that the Second Periphrastic Conjugation is *passive*, and involves the idea of *necessity* or *obligation*.

**389. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.**

**hōc mihi faciendū est**, *this must be done by me, or I must do this.*

**intellēxit pontem sibi faciendū esse**, *he understood that a bridge must be built by him, or that he must build a bridge.*

Observe that the person by whom the action is to be performed is put in the dative. This is called the *dative of agent*.

**390. RULE.**—*With the gerundive expressing obligation, the dative is used to denote the person upon whom the obligation rests.*

**391. VOCABULARY.**

<b>autem</b> , <i>conj.</i> , but, however, ( <i>the second word in its clause</i> ).	<b>ēgredior</b> , -gredi, -gressus sum, go out, come out, [ <b>ē</b> + <b>gredior</b> ( <i>for gradior</i> , step, go)].
<b>coepī</b> , coepisse, began ( <i>only the tenses formed from the perfect stem exist</i> ), followed by the infinitive.	<b>fortūna</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , fortune.
<b>cōnsuēscō</b> , -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, be accustomed, [ <b>con</b> + <b>suēscō</b> ].	<b>prōgredior</b> , -gredi, -gressus sum, go forward, advance, [ <b>prō</b> + <b>gradior</b> ].
<b>dēmōnstrō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, show, explain, demonstrate, [ <b>dē</b> + <b>mōnstrō</b> , show].	<b>trādō</b> , -dere, -didī, -ditum, give over, hand over, give up, [ <b>trā</b> ( <i>for trāns</i> , across or over) + a shortened form of <b>da</b> , the root of <b>dō</b> , give].

**392. EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Ibi nōbīs cōsistendū est ubi imperātor ut cōsistāmus imperat. 2. Imperāvit autem ut sub mūrō cōsisterēmus, nam animadverterat hostēs prōgressūrōs esse. 3. Portā ad ēgrediendū apertā, tamen militēs in castrīs retinuit. 4. Scūta et pīla nostra trādenda sunt, animōs autem semper retinēbimus. 5. Ibi multīs lapidibus in ūnum locum coniectīs mūrū facere coepērunt.

6. Omnia dēmōnstrāvī quae mihi dēmōnstranda erant.  
 7. Quaesivit nūm milītēs quōs in silvā cōnspexisset ēgres-  
 sūrī essent. 8. Helvētīī quidem pulsī sunt, Germānī au-  
 tem vincendī sunt. 9. Discipulis multa facienda sunt ad  
 grātiā apud magistrum petendam. 10. Dixit fore ut  
 castra trāderentur, cum milītēs pulsī essent. 11. Intelle-  
 gendum est quanta fortūnae sit potestās. 12. Quaerō  
 quid factūrī sītis ut apud cīvēs grātiā valeātis. 13. Cōn-  
 suēscunt hominēs multa facere quae facienda nōn sunt.  
 14. Ducī militum animī ad pūgnandum cōfirmandī sunt.

II. 1. The Britons were accustomed to choose leaders  
 when they were about to go out from their territories.  
 2. Influence and power ought to be sought, but friendship  
 is better. 3. I do not doubt that the enemy will advance  
 with great spirit. 4. Since the enemy have begun to  
 build (*make*) a wall, we must go out against them.  
 5. You say that you have come to seek peace, but  
 peace must not be made unless you give up (*your*) arms.  
 6. Cæsar explains in the first book with what great (*how*  
*great*) peoples he had to fight (it was to be fought by  
 him). 7. When the general perceived the shields of the  
 enemy in the wood, he understood that he must go out to  
 fight. 8. Not even his enemies doubt that Cæsar will  
 conquer the Gauls. 9. We must throw all our shields  
 together in(*to*) one place, but must retain our swords in  
 our hands. 10. You must not go out; for your father  
 ordered you to remain at home.

**393.****READING LESSON.**

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 54.]

Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī (*Suebī*, a  
 German tribe) quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum re-

verti coepērunt, quōs Ubiī (another tribe), quī proximī Rhēnum<sup>1</sup> incolunt, territōs secūtī, māgnū ex hīs numerum occidērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus māximīs bellis cōfectīs, mātūrius paulō (*a little*) quam tempus annī pōstulābat in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit (*led away*); hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem (*nearer*<sup>2</sup>) Galliam ad conventūs (*circuit courts*<sup>3</sup>) agendōs profectus est.

---

<sup>1</sup> Rhēnum : the accusative is often used after *proximus*.

<sup>2</sup> *Nearer*, or *Hither Gaul* was Gaul nearer Rome; *i.e.* the northern part of what is now Italy.

<sup>3</sup> Caesar was governor of Gaul, and holding courts was one of his duties.



## SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT-READING.

[Words not in the vocabularies are given in the foot-notes.]

### 394.

#### *Respect to Age.*

Lysander<sup>1</sup> Lacedaemonius<sup>2</sup> hōc dixisse dicitur: "Lacedaemone<sup>3</sup> optimē vivere possunt senēs. Nusquam<sup>4</sup> enim<sup>5</sup> tantam habent auctoritatem." Athēnīs olim<sup>6</sup> lūdis<sup>7</sup> institūtis<sup>8</sup> quidam in theātrum<sup>9</sup> senex vēnit, nec ei locus datus est ā suis cīvibus; tum<sup>10</sup> ad lēgātōs Lacedaemoniōs accēssit<sup>11</sup>; hī autem omnēs cōsurrēxere<sup>12</sup> et senī locum dedērunt. Hōc factum<sup>13</sup> probantibus<sup>14</sup> Athēniēnsibus,<sup>15</sup> ūnus ē lēgātis<sup>16</sup> dixit, "Athēniēnsēs sciunt quidem rēcta<sup>17</sup> facere, sed facere nōlunt.

<sup>1</sup> *Lysander*, a man's name.    <sup>2</sup> *Lacedæmonian*.    <sup>3</sup> *At Lacedæmon*.  
<sup>4</sup> *Nowhere*.    <sup>5</sup> *For* (conj., postpositive).    <sup>6</sup> *Once upon a time*.  
<sup>7</sup> *Games*.    <sup>8</sup> Perf. part. of *instituō*, arrange, put in order. Here lūdis institūtis, when a play was to be given.    <sup>9</sup> *Theatre*.    <sup>10</sup> *Then*.  
<sup>11</sup> *Approached*.    <sup>12</sup> *Rose up at once*.    <sup>13</sup> *Act*.    <sup>14</sup> *Approving* (pres. part. of *probō*, 1).    <sup>15</sup> *The Athenians*.    <sup>16</sup> Instead of the partitive genitive, the abl. with *ē* or *ex* may be used.    <sup>17</sup> *Right* (n. pl.).

### 395.

#### *A Retort.*

Vēnit olim<sup>1</sup> quidam ad Aristippum philosophum<sup>2</sup> ei-que dixit: "Visne filium meum artēs tuās docēre<sup>3</sup>?" Respondit Aristippus: "Hōc equidem<sup>4</sup> faciam acceptis<sup>5</sup> duōbus talentis.<sup>6</sup>" Pater autem prētiō<sup>7</sup> territus, dixit:

"At servum minōris<sup>8</sup> emere<sup>9</sup> possum." Contrā<sup>10</sup> Aris-  
tippus, "Fac<sup>11</sup> hōc: ita duōs servōs habēbis."

<sup>1</sup> Once. <sup>2</sup> Philosopher. <sup>3</sup> Teach. <sup>4</sup> Certainly. <sup>5</sup> Perf. part. of accipio, receive. <sup>6</sup> Talents, a sum of money. <sup>7</sup> Price. <sup>8</sup> For less (genitive, denoting an indefinite price). <sup>9</sup> Buy. <sup>10</sup> In reply. <sup>11</sup> Imperative of facio.

## 396.

*An Honorable People.*

Themistoclēs<sup>1</sup> olim<sup>2</sup> pūgnā nāvālī<sup>3</sup> victīs Persīs<sup>4</sup> Athē-  
nīs apud conciōnem<sup>5</sup> dixit: "Cōnsilium in animō habeo:  
hōc utile<sup>6</sup> reipublicae erit, cēlārī tamen oportet.<sup>7</sup> Ūnī ē  
primōribus<sup>8</sup> rem dicere volō." Aristidēs<sup>9</sup> ad hōc mūnus<sup>10</sup>  
dēlēctus est. Huic dixit Themistoclēs: "Lacedaemoniō-  
rum classis<sup>11</sup> in ancorīs<sup>12</sup> in portū est. Hanc clam<sup>13</sup>  
incendere<sup>14</sup> poterimus. Ita illōrum potestās nāvālīs<sup>3</sup>  
dēlēbitur.<sup>15</sup>" Hīs audītīs Aristidēs reversus apud con-  
ciōnem<sup>5</sup> dixit: "Themistoclis cōnsilium ūtile quidem,  
sed minimē<sup>16</sup> honestum<sup>17</sup> est." Itaque Athēniēnsēs nē  
audītum quidem cōnsilium sprēvērunt.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> An Athenian statesman. <sup>2</sup> Once. <sup>3</sup> Naval. <sup>4</sup> Persians.  
<sup>5</sup> Assembly. <sup>6</sup> Useful. <sup>7</sup> Must, is necessary. <sup>8</sup> The chief men.  
Instead of a partitive genitive, the abl. with ē is used. <sup>9</sup> A prominent  
Athenian. <sup>10</sup> Duty. <sup>11</sup> Fleet. <sup>12</sup> Anchors. Here in ancorīs,  
at anchor. <sup>13</sup> Secretly. <sup>14</sup> Set on fire. <sup>15</sup> Dēlēō, 2, destroy.  
<sup>16</sup> Not at all. <sup>17</sup> Honorable. <sup>18</sup> Rejected.

## 397.

*The Ass and the Wolf.*

Ad asinum<sup>1</sup> gravī morbō<sup>2</sup> aegrum<sup>3</sup> sociī vērunt, ut  
quid ageret<sup>4</sup> vidērent. Inter aliōs lupus<sup>5</sup> quoque<sup>6</sup> vēnit.  
Quī cum corpus eius tangeret,<sup>7</sup> et interrogāvisset,<sup>8</sup> quae  
corporis partēs māximē dolērent, asinus respondit: "Eae  
partēs corporis māximē dolent, quās tū tangis."<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ass. <sup>2</sup> Disease. <sup>3</sup> Sick. <sup>4</sup> What he was doing, i.e. how he did.  
<sup>5</sup> Wolf. <sup>6</sup> Also. <sup>7</sup> Touched (tangō, -ere, tetigi, tactum). <sup>8</sup> Had  
asked.

## 398.

*The Lion's Share.*

Cum leō<sup>1</sup> vñātum<sup>2</sup> īret, socii eius erant canis<sup>3</sup> et lupus.<sup>4</sup> Leō cum partēs praedae<sup>5</sup> aequālēs<sup>6</sup> factae essent, ita locūtus est<sup>7</sup>: “Prīmam partem capiō, quia<sup>8</sup> rēx vester sum; secundam, quia<sup>8</sup> fortis sum mihi dabit; tertiam quī<sup>9</sup> tetigerit<sup>10</sup> mē inimicum sibi habēbit. Ita leō tōtam prae-dam<sup>6</sup> sōlus abstulit.<sup>11</sup> Haec fābula docet, quam<sup>12</sup> periculōsum<sup>13</sup> sit societātēs<sup>14</sup> cum potentiōribus inire.<sup>15</sup>

- <sup>1</sup> *Lion.*    <sup>2</sup> *To hunt* (supine of *vñor*, 1, dep.).    <sup>3</sup> *Dog.*    <sup>4</sup> *Wolf.*  
<sup>5</sup> *Booty.*    <sup>6</sup> *Equal.*    <sup>7</sup> *Spoke* (*loquor, loqui, locūtus sum*).  
<sup>8</sup> *Because.*    <sup>9</sup> *Whoever.*    <sup>10</sup> *From tangō, touch.*    <sup>11</sup> *Took away* [*aufferō, auferre, abstuli, ablātum, (ab + ferō)*].    <sup>12</sup> *How.*  
<sup>13</sup> *Dangerous.*    <sup>14</sup> *Alliances.*    <sup>15</sup> *Enter into* (*in + eō*).

## 399.

*Julius Caesar.*

[Adapted from Eutropius, Book VI. 17-25.]

1. Annō urbis conditae<sup>1</sup> sēscentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō tertiō Gāius Iūlius Caesar, quī postea<sup>2</sup> imperāvit<sup>3</sup> cum Lūciō Bibulō<sup>4</sup> cōsul est factus. Is primō<sup>5</sup> vicit Helvētiōs, quī nunc Sēquanī appellantur, deinde<sup>6</sup> vincendō per bella gravissima usque ad<sup>7</sup> Oceanum Britannicum<sup>8</sup> prōcēssit.<sup>9</sup> Domuit<sup>10</sup> autem annis novem ferē omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Oceanum est. Britannis mox<sup>11</sup> bellum intulit, quibus ante eum nē nōmen quidem Rōmānōrum cōgnitum erat, et eōs quoque<sup>12</sup> victōs obsidibus acceptis<sup>13</sup> stipendiārīōs<sup>14</sup> fēcit. Galliae autem tributum<sup>15</sup> imperāvit, Germānōsque multis proeliis vicit.

- <sup>1</sup> *In the year of the founded city, i.e. since the foundation of the city. Rome was founded B.C. 753.*    <sup>2</sup> *Afterwards.*    <sup>3</sup> *Was emperor.*  
<sup>4</sup> *The Romans elected two consuls annually.*    <sup>5</sup> *First, i.e. at first.*  
<sup>6</sup> *Next.*    <sup>7</sup> *Usque ad, even to, as far as.*    <sup>8</sup> *The British Ocean, now called the North Sea.*    <sup>9</sup> *Advanced.*    <sup>10</sup> *Subdued.*    <sup>11</sup> *Presently.*  
<sup>12</sup> *Also.*    <sup>13</sup> *Perf. part. of accipio, receive.*    <sup>14</sup> *Tributaries.*    <sup>15</sup> *Tribute.*



2. Hinc<sup>1</sup> iam bellum cīvile<sup>2</sup> succēssit<sup>3</sup> quō populi Rōmānī fortūna mūtāta<sup>4</sup> est. Caesar enim<sup>5</sup> rediēns ex Galliā victor coepit pōscere<sup>6</sup> alterum<sup>7</sup> cōsulātum.<sup>8</sup> Contrādictum est<sup>9</sup> ā Marcellō cōsule, ā Bibulō, ā Pompēiō, ā Catōne, iūssusque<sup>10</sup> dīmissis exercitibus ad urbem redire. Propter quam<sup>11</sup> iniūriam ab Ariminō,<sup>12</sup> ubi mīlītēs suōs habēbat, adversum<sup>13</sup> patriam cum exercitū vēnit. Cōsulēs cum Pompēiō senātusque omnis atque ūniversa<sup>14</sup> nōbilitās<sup>15</sup> ex urbe fūgit et in Graeciam trānsiit. Ibi Pompēiō duce senātus contrā Caesarem bellum parāvit.

<sup>1</sup> Hence. <sup>2</sup> Civil. <sup>3</sup> Succeeded, followed. <sup>4</sup> Changed. <sup>5</sup> For (conj., postpositive). <sup>6</sup> To demand. <sup>7</sup> A second. <sup>8</sup> Consulship. <sup>9</sup> It was spoken against, i.e. opposition was made. <sup>10</sup> Supply Caesar and est. <sup>11</sup> The relative is often used in Latin where we use a demonstrative. <sup>12</sup> From about Ariminum, a place in Northern Italy. <sup>13</sup> Against. <sup>14</sup> Entire. <sup>15</sup> Nobility.

3. Caesar vacuum<sup>1</sup> urbem ingressus<sup>2</sup> dictātōrem<sup>3</sup> sē fēcit. Inde<sup>4</sup> Hispāniās<sup>5</sup> petiit. Ibi Pompēi exercitūs validissimōs<sup>6</sup> et fortissimōs cum tribus ducibus superāvit. Inde<sup>4</sup> regressus<sup>7</sup> in Graeciam trānsiit, adversum<sup>8</sup> Pompēium dīmīcāvit.<sup>9</sup> Primō proeliō victus est et fugātus,<sup>10</sup> ēvāsīt<sup>11</sup> tamen quia<sup>12</sup> nocte interveniente<sup>13</sup> Pompēius sequi nōluit, dīxitque Caesar, nec Pompēium scire vincere, et illō tantum<sup>14</sup> diē sē potuisse superārī. Deinde<sup>15</sup> in Thessaliā apud Pharsālum<sup>16</sup> ingentibus cōpiīs dīmīcāvērunt.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Empty, i.e. with the senate and nobility gone. <sup>2</sup> Having entered (perf. part. of *ingredior*). <sup>3</sup> Dictator. <sup>4</sup> Thence. <sup>5</sup> Spain was divided into two provinces by the Romans, hence the plural. <sup>6</sup> Superl. of *validus*, strong. <sup>7</sup> Having returned (perf. part. of *regredior*). <sup>8</sup> Against. <sup>9</sup> Fought. <sup>10</sup> Put to flight (from *fugō*, 1). <sup>11</sup> Escaped (from *ēvādō*). <sup>12</sup> Because. <sup>13</sup> From interveniō, come between, intervene. <sup>14</sup> Only. <sup>15</sup> Next. <sup>16</sup> Near Pharsalus in Thessaly.

4. Nunquam<sup>1</sup> Rōmānae cōpiae neque mǎiōrēs neque meliōribus ducibus convēnerant. Pūgnātum est diū et ācrit̄er, victusque ad postrēmum<sup>2</sup> Pompēius<sup>3</sup> et castra ēius direpta<sup>4</sup> sunt. Ipse fugātus<sup>5</sup> Alexandriām<sup>6</sup> petiit, ut ā rēge Aegyptī, cui tūtōr<sup>7</sup> ā senātū datus fuerat propter iuvenilem<sup>8</sup> ēius aetātem,<sup>9</sup> acciperet<sup>10</sup> auxilia. Qui fortūnam magis quam amicitiam secūtus<sup>11</sup> occīdit Pompēium, caput ēius et anulum<sup>12</sup> Caesarī mīsīt. Quō cōnspectō Caesar lacrimās<sup>13</sup> fūdissē<sup>14</sup> dīcitur.

<sup>1</sup> *Never.* After this, **neque . . . neque** must be rendered by either . . . or. <sup>2</sup> *At last.* <sup>3</sup> Supply **est.** <sup>4</sup> *Plundered* (from **diripiō**). <sup>5</sup> *Put to flight* (from **fugō**, 1). <sup>6</sup> *Alexandria*, a large seaport in Egypt. <sup>7</sup> *Guardian.* <sup>8</sup> *Youthful, juvenile.* <sup>9</sup> *Age.* <sup>10</sup> From **accipiō** (**ad** + **capīō**), *receive.* <sup>11</sup> *Following*, i.e. *paying respect to.* <sup>12</sup> *Ring.* A seal ring, to prove his identity. <sup>13</sup> *Tears.* <sup>14</sup> *Perf. inf. of fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour, here shed.*

5. Mox<sup>1</sup> Caesar Alexandriām vēnit. Ipsī<sup>2</sup> quoque<sup>3</sup> Ptolemaeus<sup>4</sup> parāre voluit insidiās,<sup>5</sup> quā causā rēgi bellum illātum est. Eō victō Caesar Alexandriā potitus rēgnum Cleopatrae dedit, Ptolemaei sorōrī. Inde<sup>7</sup> rediēns Caesar Pharnacem<sup>6</sup> quī multās populi Rōmānī prōvinciās occupābat, proeliō vīcit, et ad mortem coēgit. Inde<sup>7</sup> Rōmam regressus<sup>8</sup> tertiō<sup>9</sup> sē cōsulem fēcīt. Inde<sup>7</sup> in Africam profectus est, ubi multī nōbiles, quōrum ducēs prīncipēs erant rei pūblicae, bellum reparāverant.<sup>10</sup> Contrā hōs commissō proeliō victor fuit Caesar. Ducēs eōrum aut ipsī sē occīdērunt aut ā Caesare interfecti sunt.

<sup>1</sup> *Presently.* <sup>2</sup> Supply **Caesari**, *against Caesar himself.* <sup>3</sup> *Also.* <sup>4</sup> The king of Egypt mentioned above. <sup>5</sup> *Treachery*, i.e. he wished to murder him. <sup>6</sup> A king of Pontus. <sup>7</sup> *Thence.* <sup>8</sup> *Having returned* (from **regredior**). <sup>9</sup> *For the third time.* <sup>10</sup> *Had renewed* [from **reparō** (**re** + **parō**)].

6. Post annum Caesar Rōmam regressus<sup>1</sup> quārtō<sup>2</sup> sē cōsulem fēcit et statim<sup>3</sup> ad Hispāniās est profectus, ubi Pompēi filiōs, Gnaeum et Sextum, quī ingēns bellum reparāverant,<sup>4</sup> apud Mundam cīvitātem māgnō proeliō superāvit. Ex Pompēi filiis māior occisus est, minor fūgit. Inde<sup>5</sup> Caesar bellis cīvilibus<sup>6</sup> tōtō orbe<sup>7</sup> compositis<sup>8</sup> Rōmam rediit. Agere insolentius<sup>9</sup> coepit et contrā cōsuetūdinem<sup>10</sup> Rōmānae libertātis.<sup>11</sup> Haec cum diūtius ferre nōn possent coniūrātiōnem<sup>12</sup> in eum fēcērunt multī senātōrēs<sup>13</sup> equitēsque<sup>14</sup> Rōmānī. Prīncipēs fuērunt inter coniūrātōs<sup>15</sup> duo Brūtī, ex eō genere<sup>16</sup> Brūtī, quī primus Rōmae cōsul fuerat et rēgēs expulerat,<sup>17</sup> Gāius Cassius et Servilius Casca. Ergō<sup>18</sup> Caesar, cum senātūs diē inter cēterōs<sup>19</sup> vēnisset ad cūriam,<sup>20</sup> vīgintī tribus vulneribus cōnfossus est.<sup>21</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Having returned.<sup>2</sup> For the fourth time.<sup>3</sup> Immediately.<sup>4</sup> Had renewed.<sup>5</sup> Thence, then.<sup>6</sup> Civil.<sup>7</sup> World (orb of the earth).<sup>8</sup> Put to rest, finished (con + pōnō).<sup>9</sup> More arrogantly.<sup>10</sup> Custom, i.e. contrary to the free institutions of the Romans.<sup>11</sup> Liberty.<sup>12</sup> Conspiracy.<sup>13</sup> Senators.<sup>14</sup> Knights.<sup>15</sup> Conspirators.<sup>16</sup> Family.<sup>17</sup> Had driven out.<sup>18</sup> Therefore, so.<sup>19</sup> The rest.<sup>20</sup> The senate house.<sup>21</sup> Was pierced, stabbed to death.

## REGULAR VERBS.

### First Conjugation.

**400.** Principal Parts: **Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum.**

Stem: **amā-**.

#### *Indicative.*

##### Active Voice.

##### Passive Voice.

##### PRESENT.

*I love, am loving, do love, etc.*

*I am loved, etc.*

**amō      amāmus**  
**amās      amātis**  
**amat      amant**

**amor      amāmur**  
**amāris or -re      amāmini**  
**amātur      amantur**

##### IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.*

*I was loved, etc.*

**amābam      amābāmus**  
**amābās      amābātis**  
**amābat      amābant**

**amābar      amābāmur**  
**amābāris or -re      amābāmini**  
**amābātur      amābantur**

##### FUTURE.

*I shall love, etc.*

*I shall be loved, etc.*

**amābō      amābimus**  
**amābis      amābitis**  
**amābit      amābunt**

**amābōr      amābimur**  
**amāberis or -re      amābimini**  
**amābitur      amābuntur**

##### PERFECT.

*I have loved, I loved, etc.*

*I have been (was) loved, etc.*

**amāvī      amāvimus**  
**amāvisti      amāvistis**  
**amāvit      amāverunt or -re**

**amātus** { **sum**  
              **es**      **amāti** { **sumus**  
              **est**            **estis**  
                              **sunt**

**Active Voice.****Passive Voice.****PLUPERFECT.***I had loved, etc.**I had been loved, etc.*

amāveram amāverāmus  
 amāverās amāverātis  
 amāverat amāverant

amātus { eram  
 erās  
 erat } amāti { erāmus  
 erātis  
 erant }

**FUTURE PERFECT.***I shall have loved, etc.**I shall have been loved, etc.*

amāverō amāverimus  
 amāveris amāveritis  
 amāverit amāverint

amātus { erō  
 eris  
 erit } amāti { erimus  
 eritis  
 erunt }

*Subjunctive.*<sup>1</sup>**PRESENT.**

amem amēmus  
 amēs amētis  
 amet ament

amer amēmur  
 amēris or -re amēmini  
 amētur amentur

**IMPERFECT.**

amārem amārēmus  
 amārēs amārētis  
 amāret amārent

amārer amārēmur  
 amārēris or -re amārēmini  
 amārētur amārentur

**PERFECT.**

amāverim amāverimus  
 amāveris amāveritis  
 amāverit amāverint

amātus { sim  
 sis  
 sit } amāti { simus  
 sitis  
 sint }

**PLUPERFECT.**

amāvissem amāvissēmus  
 amāvissēs amāvissētis  
 amāvisset amāvissent

amātus { essem  
 essēs  
 esset } amāti { essēmus  
 essētis  
 essent }

<sup>1</sup> No satisfactory translation for the subjunctive can be given in the paradigms. It must be learned from the exercises illustrating the uses of the subjunctive.

**Active Voice.****Passive Voice.***Imperative.***PRESENT.**

amā, love thou.

amāre, be thou loved.

amāte, love ye.

amāmini, be ye loved.

**FUTURE.**

amātō, thou shalt love.

amātor, thou shalt be loved.

amātō, he shall love.

amātor, he shall be loved.

amātōte, you shall love.

amantō, they shall love.

amantor, they shall be loved.

*Infinitive.*

PRES. amāre, to love.

amārī, to be loved.

PERF. amāvisse, to have loved.

amātus esse, to have been loved.

FUT. amātūrus esse, to be  
about to love.amātum irī, to be about to be  
loved.*Participles.*

PRES. amāns, -antis, loving.

PERF. amātus, -a, -um, having

FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um,  
about to love.

been loved.

*Gerund.**Gerundive.*

G. amandī, of loving.

amandus, -a, -um, to be loved.

D. amandō, for loving.

AC. amandum, loving.

AB. amandō, by loving.

*Supine.*

AC. amātum, to love.

AB. amātū, to love.

**401. Second Conjugation.**Principal Parts: **habeō, habēre, habui, habitum, have, hold.**<sup>1</sup>Stem: **habē-**.*Indicative.***Active Voice.***I hold, etc.*

habeō	habēmus
habēs	habētis
habet	habent

**Passive Voice.****PRESENT.***I am held, etc.*

habeor	habēmur
habēris or -re	habēmini
habētur	habentur

**IMPERFECT.***I held, was holding, etc.**I was held, etc.*

habēbam	habēbāmus	habēbar	habēbāmur
habēbās	habēbātis	habēbāris or -re	habēbāmini
habēbat	habēbant	habēbātur	habēbantur

**FUTURE.***I shall hold, etc.**I shall be held, etc.*

habēbō	habēbimus	habēbor	habēbimur
habēbis	habēbitis	habēberis or -re	habēbimini
habēbit	habēbunt	habēbitur	habēbuntur

**PERFECT.***I have held, etc.**I have been held, etc.*

habui	habuimus	habitus {	sum	habiti {	sumus
habuistī	habuistis		es		estis
habuit	habuerunt or -re		est		sunt

<sup>1</sup> The meaning *have* is the more common, but *hold* is better adapted to the paradigm.

**Active Voice.**

**Passive Voice.**

**PLUPERFECT.**

*I had held, etc.*

*I had been held, etc.*

habueram habuerāmus  
habuerās habuerātis  
habuerat habuerant

habitus { eram  
erās  
erat } habitī { erāmus  
erātis  
erant

**FUTURE PERFECT.**

*I shall have held, etc.*

*I shall have been held, etc.*

habuerō habuerimus  
habueris habueritis  
habuerit habuerint

habitus { erō  
eris  
erit } habitī { erimus  
eritis  
erunt

*Subjunctive.*

**PRESENT.**

habeam habeāmus  
habeās habeātis  
habeat habeant

habear habeāmur  
habeāris or-re habeāmini  
habeātur habeantur

**IMPERFECT.**

habērem habērēmus  
habērēs habērētis  
habēret habērent

habērer habērēmur  
habērēris or-re habērēmini  
habērētur habērentur

**PERFECT.**

habuerim habuerimus  
habueris habueritis  
habuerit habuerint

habitus { sim  
sis  
sit } habitī { simus  
sitis  
sint

**PLUPERFECT.**

habuissē habuissēmus  
habuissēs habuissētis  
habuisset habuissent

habitus { essem  
essēs  
esset } habitī { essemus  
essētis  
essent



**Active Voice.****Passive Voice.***Imperative.***PRESENT.**

habē, hold thou.

habēre, be thou held.

habēte, hold ye.

habēminī, be ye held.

**FUTURE.**

habētō, thou shalt hold.

habētor, thou shalt be held.

habētō, he shall hold.

habētor, he shall be held.

habētōte, you shall hold.

habentō, they shall hold.

habentor, they shall be held.

*Infinitive.***PRES.** habēre, to hold.

habēri, to be held.

**PERF.** habuisse, to have held.

habitus esse, to have been held.

**FUT.** habitūrus esse, to be  
about to hold.habitum iri, to be about to be  
held.*Participles.***PRES.** habēns, -entis, holding.**PERF.** habitus, -a, -um, having**FUT.** habitūrus, -a, -um, about  
to hold.

been held.

*Gerund.**Gerundive.***G.** habendī, of holding.

habendus, -a, -um, to be held.

**D.** habendō, for holding.**AC.** habendum, holding.**AB.** habendō, by holding.*Supine.***AC.** habitum, to hold.**AB.** habitū, to hold.

**Third Conjugation.****402. Principal Parts: Dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum.**

Stem: dūcē.

*Indicative.***Active Voice.****Passive Voice.****PRESENT.***I lead, am leading, etc.**I am led, etc.*

dūcō      dūcimus  
 dūcis      dūcitis  
 dūcit      dūcunt

dūcor      dūcimur  
 dūceris or -re      dūcimini  
 dūcitur      dūcuntur

**IMPERFECT.***I led, was leading, etc.**I was led, was being led, etc.*

dūcēbam      dūcēbāmus  
 dūcēbās      dūcēbātis  
 dūcēbat      dūcēbant

dūcēbar      dūcēbāmur  
 dūcēbāris or -re      dūcēbāminī  
 dūcēbātur      dūcēbantur

**FUTURE.***I shall lead, etc.**I shall be led, etc.*

dūcam      dūcēmus  
 dūcēs      dūcētis  
 dūcet      dūcent

dūcar      dūcēmur  
 dūcēris or -re      dūcēmini  
 dūcētur      dūcentur

**PERFECT.***I led, have led, etc.**I was led, have been led, etc.*

dūxī      dūximus  
 dūxistī      dūxistis  
 dūxit      dūxērunt or -re

ductus { sum  
           es  
           est      ducti { sumus  
                               estis  
                               sunt

**Active Voice.****Passive Voice.****PLUPERFECT.***I had led, etc.**I had been led, etc.*

dūxeram dūxerāmus  
 dūxerās dūxerātis  
 dūxerat dūxerant

ductus { eram  
           { erās     ducti { erāmus  
           { erat         { erātis  
                               { erant

**FUTURE PERFECT.***I shall have led, etc.**I shall have been led, etc.*

dūxerō dūxerimus  
 dūxeris dūxeritis  
 dūxerit dūxerint

ductus { erō  
           { eris     ducti { erimus  
           { erit         { eritis  
                               { erunt

**Subjunctive.****PRESENT.**

dūcam dūcāmus  
 dūcās dūcātis  
 dūcat dūcant

dūcar dūcāmur  
 dūcāris or -re dūcāminī  
 dūcātur dūcantur

**IMPERFECT.**

dūcerem dūcerēmus  
 dūcerēs dūcerētis  
 dūceret dūcerent

dūcerer dūcerēmur  
 dūcerēris or -re dūcerēmini  
 dūcerētur dūcerentur

**PERFECT.**

dūxerim dūxerimus  
 dūxeris dūxeritis  
 dūxerit dūxerint

ductus { sim  
           { sis     ducti { simus  
           { sit         { sitis  
                               { sint

**PLUPERFECT.**

dūxissem dūxissemus  
 dūxisseēs dūxisseētis  
 dūxisset dūxisset

ductus { essem  
           { esseēs     ducti { essemus  
           { esset         { esseētis  
                               { essent

**Active Voice.****Passive Voice.***Imperative.***PRESENT.**dūc(e),<sup>1</sup> *lead thou.*dūcere, *be thou led.*dūcite, *lead ye.*dūcimini, *be ye led.***FUTURE.**dūcitō, *thou shalt lead.*dūcitor, *thou shalt be led.*dūcitō, *he shall lead.*dūcitor, *he shall be led.*dūcitōte, *ye shall lead.*dūcuntō, *they shall lead.*dūcuntor, *they shall be led.**Infinitive.*PRES. dūcere, *to lead.*dūcī, *to be led.*PERF. dūxisse, *to have led.*, ductus esse, *to have been led.*FUT. ductūrus esse, *to be about to lead.*ductum iri, *to be about to be led.**Participles.*PRES. dūcēns, -entis, *leading.*PERF. ductus, -a, -um, *having*FUT. ductūrus, -a, -um, *about to lead.**been led.**Gerund.**Gerundive.*G. dūcendī, *of leading.*dūcendus, -a, -um, *to be led.*D. dūcendō, *for leading.*Ac. dūcendum, *leading.*Ab. dūcendō, *by leading.**Supine.*Ac. ductum, *to lead.*Ab. ductū, *to lead.*

<sup>1</sup> Dūce would be the regular form, but the imperatives of dūcō, dūcō, faciō, and ferō lose the ending -e.

**Fourth Conjugation.****403. Principal Parts: Audiō, audire, audiui, auditum.**Stem: **audi.***Indicative.***Active Voice.****Passive Voice.****PRESENT.***I hear, am hearing, do hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

audiō      audimus  
audis      auditis  
audit      audiunt

audior      audimur  
audiris or-re      audimini  
auditur      audiuntur

**IMPERFECT.***I heard, was hearing, did hear, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam      audiēbāmus  
audiēbās      audiēbātis  
audiēbat      audiēbant

audiēbar      audiēbāmur  
audiēbāris or-re      audiēbāmini  
audiēbātur      audiēbantur

**FUTURE.***I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

audiam      audiēmus  
audies      audiētis  
audiet      audient

audiar      audiēmur  
audiēris      audiēmini  
audiētur      audientur

**PERFECT.***I have heard, I heard, etc.**I have been (was) heard, etc.*

audīvi      audīvimus  
audīvistī      audīvistis  
audīvit      audīverunt or-re

audītus { sum  
          es      audīti { sumus  
          est           estis  
                  sunt

**Active Voice.****Passive Voice.****PLUPERFECT.***I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audiveram audiverāmus  
 audiverās audiverātis  
 audiverat audiverant

audītus { eram  
 erās  
 erat } audīti { erāmus  
 erātis  
 erant }

**FUTURE PERFECT.***I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audiverō audiverimus  
 audiveris audiveritis  
 audiverit audiverint

audītus { erō  
 eris  
 erit } audīti { erimus  
 eritis  
 erunt }

*Subjunctive.***PRESENT.**

audiam audiamus  
 audias audiatīs  
 audiat audiant

audiar audiamur  
 audiaris or re audiamini  
 audiatur audiantur

**IMPERFECT.**

audirem audirēmus  
 audirēs audirētis  
 audiret audirent

audirer audirēmur  
 audireris or -re audirēmini  
 audirētur audirentur

**PERFECT.**

audiverim audiverimus  
 audiveris audiveritis  
 audiverit audiverint

audītus { sim  
 sis  
 sit } audīti { simus  
 sitis  
 sint }

**PLUPERFECT.**

audivissem audivissēmus  
 audivissēs audivissētis  
 audivisset audivissent

audītus { essem  
 essēs  
 esset } audīti { essēmus  
 essētis  
 essent }

**Active Voice.****Passive Voice.***Imperative.***PRESENT.**audī, *hear thou.*audīre, *be thou heard.*audīte, *hear ye.*audimini, *be ye heard.***FUTURE.**auditō, *thou shalt hear.*auditor, *thou shalt be heard.*auditō, *he shall hear.*auditor, *he shall be heard.*auditōte, *ye shall hear.*audiuntō, *they shall hear.*audiuntor, *they shall be heard.**Infinitive.***PRES.** audire, *to hear.*audiri, *to be heard.***PERF.** audivisse, *to have heard.*auditus esse, *to have been heard.***FUT.** auditurus esse, *to be about to hear.*auditum iri, *to be about to be heard.**Participles.***PRES.** audiēns, -entis, *hearing.***PERF.** auditus, -a, -um, *heard,***FUT.** auditurus, -a, -um, *about to hear.**having been heard.**Gerund.**Gerundive.***G.** audiendī, *of hearing.*audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.***D.** audiendō, *for hearing.***AC.** audiendum, *hearing.***AB.** audiendō, *by hearing.**Supine.***AC.** auditum, *to hear.***AB.** auditū, *to hear.*

**Third Conjugation: Verbs in -iō.**

**404.** Verbs of the third conjugation in -iō have some forms of the present stem like the fourth conjugation. Before *a*, *ō*, *u*, and *ē* they retain the *i* of the stem, but lose it elsewhere, except in the gerund and participle.

**Principal Parts:** Capiō, capere, cēpī, captum.

**Stem:** capi.

*Indicative.***Active Voice.****Passive Voice.****PRESENT.**

*I take, am taking, do take, etc.*

*I am taken, etc.*

capiō      capimus  
capis      capitis  
capit      capiunt

capior      capimur  
caperis or -re      capimini  
capitur      capiuntur

**IMPERFECT.**

*I took, was taking, did take, etc.*

*I was taken, etc.*

capiēbam, etc.

capiēbar, etc.

**FUTURE.**

*I shall take, etc.*

*I shall be taken, etc.*

capiam      capiēmus  
capiēs      capiētis  
capiet      capient

capiar      capiēmur  
capiēris or -re      capiēmini  
capiētur      capientur

**PERFECT.**

*I have taken, took, etc.*

*I have been (was) taken, etc.*

cēpī, etc.

captus sum, etc.



**Active Voice.**

*I had taken, etc.*  
cēperam, etc.

*I shall have taken, etc.*  
cēperō, etc.

**Passive Voice.****PLUPERFECT.**

*I had been taken, etc.*  
captus eram, etc.

**FUTURE PERFECT.**

*I shall have been taken, etc.*  
captus erō, etc.

*Subjunctive.***PRESENT.**

capiam      capiāmus  
capiās      capiātis  
capiat      capiant

capiar      capiāmur  
capiāris or -re      capiāmini  
capiātur      capiantur

**IMPERFECT.**

caperem, etc.

caperer, etc.

**PERFECT.**

cēperim, etc.

captus sim, etc.

**PLUPERFECT.**

cēpissem, etc.

captus essem, etc.

*Imperative.***PRESENT.**

cape, take (thou).  
capite, take (ye).

capere, be (thou) taken.  
capimini, be (ye) taken.

**FUTURE.**

capitō, thou shalt take.  
capitō, he shall take.  
capitōte, ye shall take.  
capiuntō, they shall take.

capitor, thou shalt be taken.  
capitor, he shall be taken.  
capiuntor, they shall be taken.

**Active Voice.****Passive Voice.***Infinitive.*

PRES. capere, <i>to take.</i>	capī, <i>to be taken.</i>
PERF. cēpisse, <i>to have taken.</i>	captus esse, <i>to have been taken.</i>
FUT. captūrus esse, <i>to be about to take.</i>	captum irī, <i>to be about to be taken.</i>

*Participles.*

PRES. capiēns, -ientis, <i>taking.</i>	PERF. captus, -a, -um, <i>taken, having been taken.</i>
FUT. captūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to take.</i>	

*Gerund.**Gerundive.*

G. capiendī, <i>of taking.</i>	capiendus, -a, -um, <i>to be taken.</i>
D. capiendō, <i>for taking.</i>	
AC. capiendum, <i>taking.</i>	
AB. capiendō, <i>by taking.</i>	

*Supine.*

AC. captum, <i>to take.</i>
AB. captū, <i>to take.</i>



## IRREGULAR VERBS.

**405.**      Principal Parts: **Sum, esse, fui.**

### *Indicative.*

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
<i>I am, etc.</i>		<i>I was, etc.</i>	
sum	sumus	eram	erāmus
es	estis	erās	erātis
est	sunt	erat	erant
FUTURE.		PERFECT.	
<i>I shall be, etc.</i>		<i>I was, have been, etc.</i>	
erō	erimus	fui	fuimus
eris	eritis	fuisti	fuistis
erit	erunt	fuit	fuērunt or -ēre
PLUPERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>I had been, etc.</i>		<i>I shall have been, etc.</i>	
fueram	fuērāmus	fuero	fuerimus
fueras	fuērātis	fueris	fuertis
fuera	fuera	fuerit	fuerint

### *Subjunctive.*

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
sim	sīmus	essem	essēmus
sīs	sītis	essēs	essētis
sit	sint	esset	essent

## PERFECT.

fu <sup>er</sup> im	fu <sup>er</sup> imus
fu <sup>er</sup> is	fu <sup>er</sup> itis
fu <sup>er</sup> it	fu <sup>er</sup> int

## PLUPERFECT.

fu <sup>is</sup> sem	fu <sup>is</sup> sēmus
fu <sup>is</sup> sēs	fu <sup>is</sup> sētis
fu <sup>is</sup> set	fu <sup>is</sup> sent

*Imperative.*

## PRESENT.

es, be thou.

este, be ye.

## FUTURE.

estō, thou shalt be.

estōte, you shall be.

estō, he shall be.

suntō, they shall be.

*Infinitive.*

PRES. esse, to be.

PERF. fuisse, to have been.

FUT. { futūrus esse, } to be about to be.  
       { fore,

*Participle.*

FUT. futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.

**Compounds of Sum.****406.** Principal Parts: Possum, posse, potui, be able.*Indicative.*

## PRESENT.

possum	possumus
potes	potestis
potest	possunt

*Subjunctive.*

## PRESENT.

possim	possīmus
possis	possitis
possit	possint

IMPERFECT.

poteram	poterāmus
poterās	poterātis
poterat	poterant

IMPERFECT.

possem	possēmus
possēs	possētis
posset	possent

FUTURE.

poterō

PERFECT.

potuī

PERFECT.

potuerim

PLUPERFECT.

potueram

PLUPERFECT.

potuissem

FUTURE PERFECT.

potuerō

*Infinitive.*

PRES. posse

PERF. potuisse

*Participle.*

PRES. potēns, -entis

407.

Principal Parts:

**Prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, be profitable.**

*Indicative.*

PRESENT.

prōsum	prōsumus
prōdes	prōdestis
prōdest	prōsunt

*Subjunctive.*

PRESENT.

prōsim	prōsīmus
prōsīs	prōsitis
prōsit	prōsint

IMPERFECT.

prōderam

IMPERFECT.

prōdessem

FUTURE.

prōderō

## PERFECT.

prōfui

## PERFECT.

prōfuerim

## PLUPERFECT.

prōfueram

## PLUPERFECT.

prōfuissem

## FUTURE PERFECT.

prōfuerō

*Imperative.*

## PRESENT.

prōdes

prōdeste

## FUTURE.

prōdestō

prōdestōte

*Infinitive.*

PRES. prōdesse

PERF. prōfuisse

FUT. prōfutūrus esse

*Participle.*

FUT. prōfutūrus, -a, -um

## 408.

## Principal Parts:

Volō, velle, volui, *be willing, wish.*Nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, *be unwilling.*Mālō, mālle, mālui, *be more willing, prefer.**Indicative.*

## PRES.

volō

nōlō

mālō

vis

nōn vis

māvīs

vult

nōn vult

māvult

volumus

nōlumus

mālumus

vultis

nōn vultis

māvultis

volunt

nōlunt

mālunt

## IMPERF.

volēbam

nōlēbam

mālēbam

## FUT.

volam

nōlam

mālam

PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
FUT. PERF.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

*Subjunctive.*

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velimus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPERF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

*Imperative.*

PRES.	—	nōlī nōlīte	—
FUT.	—	nōlītō, etc.	—

*Infinitive.*

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

*Participle.*

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	—
-------	--------	--------	---



**409.** Principal Parts: **Ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear, carry.****Active.****Passive.***Indicative.*

PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris <i>or -re</i>	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERF.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus eram	
FUT. PERF.	tulerō		lātus erō	

*Subjunctive.*

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMPERF.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulissem	lātus essem

*Imperative.*

PRES.	fer <sup>1</sup>	ferte	ferre	feriminī
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

*Infinitive.*

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lāturus esse	lātum iri

*Participles.*

PRES.	ferēns	PERF. lātus
FUT.	lāturus	

<sup>1</sup> See 394, note on imperative.

*Gerund.*

G.	ferendī
D.	ferendō
Ac.	ferendum
Ab.	ferendō

*Gerundive.*

ferendus

*Supine.*

Ac.	lātum
Ab.	lātū

**410.** Principal Parts: **Eō, ire, īi or īvī, itum, go.**

**Fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become.**

*Indicative.*

PRES.	eō	īmus	fīō	fīmus
	īs	ītis	fīs	fītis
	it	eunt	fit	fīunt
IMPERF.	ībam		fīēbam	
FUT.	ībō		fiam	
PERF.	īi (īvī)		factus sum	
PLUP.	ieram		factus eram	
FUT. PERF.	ierō		factus erō	

*Subjunctive.*

PRES.	eam	fiam
IMPERF.	īrem	fierem
PERF.	ierim (īverim)	factus sim
PLUP.	īssem (īvissem, iissem)	factus essem

*Imperative.*

PRES.	ī	īte	fī	fīte
FUT.	ītō	ītōte	fītō	fītōtē
	ītō	euntō	fītō	fīuntō

*Infinitive.*

<b>Pres.</b>	ire	feri
<b>Perf.</b>	isse (ivisse, iisse)	factus esse
<b>Fut.</b>	itūrus esse	factum iri

*Participles.*

<b>Pres.</b>	iēns, Gen. euntis	<b>Perf.</b> factus
<b>Fut.</b>	itūrus	

*Gerund.<sup>1</sup>*

G.	eundi	Ac. eundum
D.	eundō	Ab. eundō

*Gerundive.*

faciendus

*Supine.*

Ac. itum	Ab. itū
----------	---------

---

<sup>1</sup> The gerundive of *eo* occurs in the neuter, *eundum*.

# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>abl.</i>	= ablative.	<i>indef.</i>	= indefinite.
<i>acc.</i>	= accusative.	<i>interr.</i>	= interrogative.
<i>adj.</i>	= adjective.	<i>m.</i>	= masculine.
<i>adv.</i>	= adverb.	<i>n.</i>	= neuter.
<i>c.</i>	= common gender.	<i>pass.</i>	= passive.
<i>cf.</i>	= compare.	<i>part.</i>	= participle.
<i>comp.</i>	= comparative.	<i>perf.</i>	= perfect.
<i>dat.</i>	= dative.	<i>pl.</i>	= plural.
<i>dem.</i>	= demonstrative.	<i>pron.</i>	= pronoun.
<i>dep.</i>	= deponent.	<i>rel.</i>	= relative.
<i>f.</i>	= feminine.	<i>sing.</i>	= singular.
<i>gen.</i>	= genitive.	<i>subst.</i>	= substantive.
<i>indecl.</i>	= indeclinable.	<i>conj.</i>	= conjunction.

## A.

**ā, ab**, *prep. with abl.*, from, by.

**absum**, -esse, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**,  
be absent, be away, be distant.

**ac** (**atque**), *conj.*, and.

**accidō**, -cidere, -cidī, fall upon, happen.

**accūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, accuse, chide.

**acer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, *adj.*, sharp, active.

**aciēs**, -eī, *f.*, line of battle.

**ācritēr**, *adv.*, sharply.

**ad**, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward.

**adducō**, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc-  
tum, lead to, induce.

**adhibeō**, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibi-  
tum, have present, call in.

**adsum**, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be  
present, assist.

**adulēscēns**, -entis, *m.*, youth,  
young man.

**adventus**, -ūs, *m.*, arrival.

**adversus**, -a, -um, (*part. of*  
**advertō**), *adj.*, adverse, un-  
favorable.

**Aedui**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Aeduans,  
a Gallic tribe.

**aestās**, -tātis, *f.*, summer.

**ager**, **agrī**, *m.*, field, country.

**āgmen**, -minis, *n.*, line of march.

**agō**, **agere**, **ēgī**, **āctum**, drive,  
do, act.

**agricola**, -ae, *m.*, farmer.

**āla**, -ae, *f.*, wing.  
**albus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, white.  
**aliēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to another, unfavorable.  
**aliquis**, -quae (-qua), -quid, (and **aliqui**, -qua, -quod), *indef. pron.*, somebody, something.  
**alius**, -a, -ud, (*gen.* **alius**, *dat.* **ali**), *adj.*, other, another; **alius** . . . **alius**, one . . . another.  
**Allobrogēs**, -um, *m.*, Allobroges, a *Gallie* tribe.  
**alter**, -era, -erum, (*gen.* **alterius**, *dat.* **alteri**), *adj.*, one (of two), the other (of two).  
**altitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, height, depth.  
**altus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, deep.  
**amicitia**, -ae, *f.*, friendship.  
**amicus**, -i, *m.*, friend.  
**āmittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum (send away), let go, lose.  
**amō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, love.  
**angustiae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, narrows, narrowness.  
**animadvertō**, -vertere, -verti, -versum, attend to, notice.  
**animal**, -ālis, *n.*, animal.  
**animus**, -ī, *m.*, spirit, courage, mind.  
**annus**, -ī, *m.*, year.  
**ante**, *prep.* with *acc.*; also *adv.*, before.  
**antiquus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, ancient, old.  
**apertus**, -a, -um, (*part. of* **aperiō**), *adj.*, open.  
**appellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call, name.

**apud**, *prep.* with *acc.*, near, among, with.  
**aqua**, -ae, *f.*, water.  
**aquila**, -ae, *f.*, eagle.  
**arbitror**, -āri, -ātus sum, think, believe, judge.  
**arbor**, **arboris**, *f.*, tree.  
**Arlovistus**, -ī, *m.*, Arlovistus, a *German* chieftain.  
**arma**, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons.  
**ars**, **artis**, *f.*, art.  
**Athēnae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Athens.  
**atque** (**ac**), *conj.*, and.  
**auctōritās**, -tātis, *f.*, influence, authority.  
**audeō**, **audēre**, **ausus sum**, (*semi-dep.*), dare.  
**audiō**, -ire, -īvi, -ītum, hear.  
**autem**, *conj.* (*postpositive*), but.  
**auxillum**, -ī, *n.*, help, assistance, aid.

## B.

**barbarus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, barbarian.  
**Belgae**, -ārum, *m. pl.*, Belgae, a division of the Gauls.  
**Bellovacī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Bellovacī, a *Gallie* tribe.  
**bellum**, -ī, *n.*, war.  
**Bibracte**, -is, *n.*, Bibracte, a town in Gaul.  
**bonus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, good.  
**brevis**, -e, *adj.*, short.  
**Britannia**, -ae, *f.*, Britain.  
**Britannus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, British; *masc. used as noun*, Briton.  
**Brūtus**, -ī, *m.*, Brutus, a *Roman* name.

## C.

**cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsum,**  
fall.

**caedēs, -is, f.,** slaughter.

**Caesar, -aris, m.,** Cæsar.

**caplō, capere, cēpī, captum,**  
take, capture.

**captivus, -i, m.,** captive, prisoner.

**caput, -itis, n.,** head.

**carmen, -minis, n.,** song, poem.

**carrus, -i, m.,** cart, wagon.

**Carthāgō, Carthāginis, f.,** Carthage, a city in Africa.

**cārus, -a, -um, adj.,** dear.

**Casticus, -ī, m.,** Casticus.

**castra, -ōrum, n. pl.,** camp.

**causa, -ae, f.,** cause, reason; *abl.*  
as *prep.* with *gen.*, because of,  
on account of, for the sake of.

**celer, -eris, -ere, adj.,** quick,  
rapid.

**celeritās, -tātis, f.,** quickness,  
speed.

**celeriter, adv.,** quickly.

**cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,** conceal,  
hide.

**centum, indecl. numeral adj.,**  
hundred.

**centuriō, -ōnis, m.,** centurion,  
commander of one hundred  
men.

**certus, -a, -um, adj.,** certain, sure.

**Cicerō, -ōnis, m.,** Cicero, a Roman.

**circiter, adv.,** about.

**circumdō, -dare, -dedi, -datum,**  
put around, surround.

**civis, -is, c.,** citizen.

**civitās, -tātis, f.,** state.

**clāmor, -ōris, m.,** shout.

**clārus, -a, -um, adj.,** famous,  
renowned.

**coepti, -isse, (no present),** began.

**cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,** think,  
ponder.

**cōgnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum,** recognize; *in perfect,*  
know.

**cōgō, cōgere, cōēgi, cōactum,**  
collect, compel, force.

**cohors, -hortis, f.,** cohort, *c. tenth*  
*part of a legion.*

**collis, -is, m.,** hill.

**colloquium, -i, n.,** parley, conference.

**columba, -ae, f.,** dove.

**comes, -itis, c.,** companion.

**commēātus, -ūs, m.,** supplies.

**committō, -mittere, -misi, -missum,** entrust; *with proelium,*  
engage in battle.

**commūtātiō, -ōnis, f.,** change.

**compleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum,** fill.

**concllium, -i, n.,** meeting, council.

**cōnferō, -ferre, contuli, collātum,** bring together, collect.

**cōnfiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,**  
finish (do up), wear out.

**cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,** assert; *also,* strengthen, encourage.

**coniciō, -icere, -lēcī, -iectum,** throw together, hurl.

**cōnor, -āri, -ātus sum,** try, endeavor.

**cōnsidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum,** (sit together), take a position, encamp.

**cōsillium**, -ī, *n.*, plan, counsel, advice.

**cōsistō**, -sistere, -stiti, *no supine*, (stand together), stand one's ground, halt.

**cōspiciō**, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, catch sight of, perceive, spy, see.

**cōstituō**, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, arrange (*one's mind*), decide, draw up (*an army*).

**cōnsuēscō**, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, accustom oneself, become accustomed.

**cōnsul**, -ulls, *m.*, consul, head of the Roman republic.

**contendō**, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, strive, hasten.

**contineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, hold together, restrain.

**contrā**, *prep.* with *acc.*, against.

**conveniō**, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, come together, convene.

**convocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call together.

**cōpia**, -ae, *f.*, abundance, supply; *pl.*, forces of soldiers.

**Corinthus**, -ī, *f.*, Corinth, a city in Greece.

**Cornēlla**, -ae, *f.*, Cornelia, a Roman name.

**cornū**, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing (*of an army*).

**corōna**, -ae, *f.*, crown, garland.

**corpus**, -oris, *n.*, body.

**cotidīānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, daily.

**cotidīē**, *adv.*, daily.

**crēdō**, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum, believe, trust.

**culpō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, blame. *cum*, *prep.* with *abl.*, with, together with.

*cum*, *conj.*, when, as, since, although.

**cūr**, *adv.*, why?

**cūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take care, cause.

**currō**, currere, cucurrī, cursum, run.

**cūstōs**, -ōdis, *c.*, guard, keeper.

## D.

**dē**, *prep.* with *abl.*, about, concerning, of (*in composition*, from, away, down).

**dēbeō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, owe, ought.

**decem**, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten.

**decimus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, tenth.

**dēditō**, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender.

**dēdūcō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead away, withdraw.

**dēfendō**, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum, protect, defend.

**dēfessus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, tired.

**dēlectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, please, delight.

**dēliberō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, consider, deliberate.

**dēligō**, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, pick from, choose.

**dēmōnstrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, show, demonstrate.

**dēsum**, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be away, fail.

**dexter**, -ra, -rum, *adj.*, right (*hand, etc.*).

**dīcō**, dīcere, dixī, dictum, say, tell.

**diēs, diēi, m.** (*sometimes f. in sing.*), day.

**difficilis, -e, adj.**, difficult.

**dignus, -a, -um, adj.**, worthy.

**diligentia, -ae, f.**, diligence.

**dimittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum**, send away, dismiss.

**dis-**, *inseparable prefix*, apart ; *cf.* **dimittō, discēdō.**

**discēdō, -cēdere, -cēsi, -cēsum**, withdraw.

**discipulus, -ī, m.**, pupil.

**dissimilis, -e, adj.**, unlike.

**diū, adv.**, long, a long time ; *comp.* **diūtius, superl. diūtissimē.**

**dividō, -videre, -vīsi, -vīsum**, separate, divide.

**Divitiacus, -ī, m.**, Divitiacus, an Aeduan noble.

**dō, dare, dedi, datum**, give.

**doleō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus**, grieve, be pained.

**dolor, -ōris, m.**, grief, pain.

**domina, -ae, f.**, mistress.

**dominus, -i, m.**, master.

**domus, -ūs, f.**, house, home.

**dōnum, -ī, n.**, gift.

**dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, doubt, hesitate.

**dubius, -a, -um, adj.**, doubtful.

**ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj.**, two hundred.

**dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**, lead.

**Dumnorix, -īgis, m.**, Dumnorix, an Aeduan, brother of Divitiacus.

**duō, -ae, -ō, adj.**, two.

**dux, ducls, m.**, leader.

## E.

**ē (ex), prep. with abl.**, out of, from.

**ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum**, lead out or away.

**efferrō, -ferre, extuli, ēlātum**, bring or carry out, produce.

**efficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum**, accomplish, effect.

**egō, mei, pers. pron.**, I.

**ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum**, go out, come out.

**eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum**, go.

**eō, adv.**, thither, to that place.

**eōdem, adv.**, to the same place.

**epistula, -ae, f.**, letter.

**eques, equitis, m.**, horseman ; *pl.*, cavalry.

**equitātus, -ūs, m.**, cavalry.

**equus, -i, m.**, horse.

**et, conj.**, and ; **et . . . et**, both . . . and.

**etiam, conj.**, even, also.

**ex (ē), prep. with abl.**, out of, from.

**exeō, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum**, go out, go away.

**exercitus, -ūs, m.**, army.

**existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, think, judge.

**explōrātor, -tōris, m.**, scout.

**expūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, take by storm.

**expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, wait for, expect.

**exterus (also exte), -a, -um, adj.**, outer, outside, external ; — *comp.* **exterior**, outer ; — *superl.* **extrēmus**, uttermost, last, farthest.



## F.

**fābula**, -ae, *f.*, story, fable.  
**facile**, *adv.* (of **facilis**), easily.  
**facilis**, -e, *adj.*, easy.  
**faciō**, **facere**, **fēci**, **factum**, do, make.  
**faveō**, -ēre, **fāvī**, **fautum**, favor.  
**fēmina**, -ae, *f.*, woman.  
**ferē**, *adv.*, almost.  
**ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, bear, carry, bring.  
**fidēs**, **fidei**, *f.*, faith, confidence, pledge.  
**fidus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, faithful.  
**filia**, -ae, *f.*, daughter.  
**filius**, -i, *m.*, son.  
**finis**, -is, *m.*, end, border; *pl.*, territory.  
**finitimus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, neighboring (bordering on); *masc.* as *noun*, neighbor.  
**fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum**, be made, be done, happen, become.  
**fluctus**, -ūs, *m.*, flood, waves.  
**flūmen**, -inis, *n.*, river.  
**fortis**, -e, *adj.*, brave.  
**fortiter**, *adv.*, bravely.  
**fortūna**, -ae, *f.*, fortune.  
**frāter**, **frātris**, *m.*, brother.  
**frūmentum**, -i, *n.*, grain.  
**fruo**, **frui**, **fruitus** and **fructus sum**, enjoy.  
**fuga**, -ae, *f.*, flight.  
**fugiō**, **fugere**, **fūgī**, **fugitum**, flee.  
**fungor**, **fungī**, **fūctus sum**, perform.

## G.

**Galba**, -ae, *m.*, Galba, a Roman name.  
**Gallia**, -ae, *f.*, Gaul, a country

nearly the same as modern France.

**Gallicus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Gallic.  
**Gallus**, -i, *m.*, Gaul, an inhabitant of the country Gaul.  
**Genāva**, -ae, *f.*, Geneva, a town in Switzerland.  
**genus**, -eris, *n.*, race, kind, sort.  
**Germānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, German; *masc.* as *noun*, a German.  
**gerō**, **gerere**, **gessi**, **gestum**, carry on, do; **bellum gerere**, wage war.  
**gladius**, -i, *m.*, sword.  
**gracilis**, -e, *adj.*, slender.  
**Graecia**, -ae, *f.*, Greece.  
**Graecus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek.  
**grātia**, -ae, *f.*, favor, influence.  
**grātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, grateful.  
**gravis**, -e, *adj.*, heavy, severe.  
**graviter**, *adv.*, heavily, deeply.

## H.

**habeō**, **habēre**, **habui**, **habitu**, have, hold.  
**Hannibal**, -is, *m.*, Hannibal, a famous Carthaginian general.  
**Helvētius**, -i, *m.*, Helvetian, of a Gallic tribe.  
**hiberna**, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, winter quarters.  
**hic**, **haec**, **hōc**, *dem. pron.*, this.  
**hiemō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, winter, pass the winter.  
**hiems**, **hiemis**, *f.*, winter.  
**Homērus**, -i, *m.*, Homer, the Greek poet.

**homō, homīnis, m.,** man, human being.

**hōra, -ae, f.,** hour.

**hortor, -āri, -ātus sum,** encourage, urge, exhort.

**hortus, -ī, m.,** garden.

**hostis, -is, m.,** enemy (*in war*).

**hūmānitās, -tātis, f.,** culture.

**humilis, -e, adj.,** lowly, humble.

### I (vowel).

**ibi, adv.,** there.

**idem, eadem, idem, dem. pron.,** the same.

**idōneus, -a, -um, adj.,** suitable.

**ignis, -is, m.,** fire.

**ille, illa, illud, dem. pron.,** that, that well known.

**impedimentum, -ī, n.,** hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.

**impediō, -ire, -ivi, -itum,** hinder, impede.

**imperātor, -ōris, m.,** general, commander-in-chief.

**imperium, -ī, n.,** command, rule, power.

**imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,** command, order.

**impetus, -ūs, m.,** charge, attack, fury.

**in, prep. with acc. and abl.;**  
1. *with acc.*, into, to, against;  
2. *with abl.*, in, on.

**in-, negative prefix, un** (*as inimicus = in + amicus, unfriend, enemy*).

**incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsum,** fall into, in with, or upon.

**incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** urge on, arouse.

**incola, -ae, m.,** inhabitant.

**incolō, -colere, -colui, -cultum,** inhabit, dwell in.

**incrēdibilis, -e, adj.,** incredible.

**inferō, -ferre, intuli, illātum,** bear into or against; **bellum inferre,** wage offensive war.

**inferus, -a, -um, adj.,** below, beneath; — *comp.* **inferior,** lower, inferior; — *superl.* **infimus** or **imus,** lowest (at the bottom of).

**ingēns, -gentis, adj.,** huge, vast.

**inimicus, -ī, m.,** enemy (*as a private person*).

**initium, -ī, n.,** beginning.

**iniūria, -ae, f.,** wrong.

**inopia, -ae, f.,** want.

**instruō, -struere, -strūxi, -strūctum,** draw up, form.

**insula, -ae, f.,** island.

**intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum,** understand.

**inter, prep. with acc.,** between, among.

**interficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum,** kill.

**ipse, -a, -um, intensive pron.,** my-, your-, him-, etc., self.

**is, ea, id, dem. pron.,** that.

**iste, ista, istud, dem. pron.,** that (*of yours*).

**ita, adv.,** so, thus.

**Italia, -ae, f.,** Italy.

**iter, itineris, n.,** road, route, journey, march.

### I (consonant).

**iaciō, -acere, -iēcī, -iactum,** throw, hurl.

**iam**, *adv.*, already, now.  
**iubeō**, **iubēre**, **iūssi**, **iūssum**,  
 order, command.  
**iūdex**, **iūdicis**, *m.*, judge.  
**iūlia**, -ae, *f.*, Julia, a Roman name.  
**iūnior**, -ius, *adj.*, (comp. of  
*iuvenis*, young, contracted for  
*iuvenior*), younger.  
**iūra**, -ae, *m.*, the Jura mountains,  
 in Switzerland.  
**iūs**, **iūris**, *n.*, right, law.  
**iūs-iurandum**, **iūrisiurandi**, *n.*,  
 oath.  
**iustus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, just.  
*iuvenis*, -e, *adj.*, young; as a  
 noun, young man.  
**iuvō**, **iuvāre**, **iūvī**, **iūtum**, aid,  
 help, assist.

## L.

**Labienus**, -ī, *m.*, Labienus, one  
 of Cæsar's lieutenants.  
**labor**, -ōris, *m.*, toil, labor.  
**laborō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, toil,  
 labor.  
**laetus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, glad, gay.  
**lapis**, **lapidis**, *m.*, stone.  
**lātitudō**, -dinis, *f.*, width,  
 breadth.  
**lātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, wide, broad.  
**laudō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, praise.  
**lēgātus**, -ī, *m.*, lieutenant, envoy.  
**legiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, legion, a division  
 of the Roman army.  
**legō**, **legere**, **lēgī**, **lēctum**, read  
 (also gather).  
**lēx**, **lēgis**, *f.*, law.  
**libenter**, *adv.*, gladly.  
**liber**, -brī, *m.*, book.  
**liber**, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free.

**liberī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, of *liber*,  
 children.  
**liberō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, set  
 free.  
**lingua**, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.  
**litus**, **litoris**, *n.*, shore.  
**locus**, -ī, *m.*, (*pl. loca*, *n.*), place.  
**longē**, *adv.*, far.  
**longitūdō**, -dinis, *f.*, length.  
**longus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, long.  
**lūx**, **lūcis**, *f.*, light.

## M.

**magister**, -trī, *m.*, master,  
 teacher.  
**magistrātus**, -ūs, *m.*, magis-  
 tracy, magistrate.  
**māgnitūdō**, -dinis, *f.*, size, mag-  
 nitude.  
**māgnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, large,  
 great.  
**mālō**, **mālle**, **māluī**, *no supine*,  
 wish more, prefer.  
**malus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad.  
**maneō**, -ēre, **mānsī**, **mānsūrus**,  
 remain, wait.  
**manipulus**, -ī, *m.*, manipule, a  
 small company of soldiers.  
**manus**, -ūs, *f.*, hand, also band.  
**Mārcus**, -ī, *m.*, Marcus.  
**mare**, **maris**, *n.*, sea.  
**Massilla**, -ae, *f.*, Massilia, the  
 Latin name of Marseilles.  
**māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother.  
**mātūrē**, *adv.*, early.  
**mātūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe.  
**medius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle of.  
**memoria**, -ae, *f.*, memory.  
**mēns**, **mentis**, *f.*, mind.  
**mēnsa**, -ae, *f.*, table.

**mēnsis, -is, m.,** month.  
**mercātor, -tōris, m.,** merchant.  
**meus, -a, -um, possess. pron.,**  
 my, mine.  
**miles, militis, m.,** soldier.  
**militāris, -e, adj.,** military.  
**militia, -ae, f.,** military service.  
**mille, indecl. num. adj.,** thou-  
 sand; **pl., millia, -um, n.,** fol-  
 lowed by *gen.*, thousand.  
**mīror, -āri, -ātus sum,** wonder  
 at, admire.  
**miser, -era, -erum, adj.,** wretched.  
**mittō, mittere, misi, missum,**  
 send.  
**moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum,** warn,  
 advise, admonish.  
**mōns, montis, m.,** mountain.  
**mors, mortis, f.,** death.  
**mōs, mōris, m.,** custom; **pl.,**  
 manners.  
**moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum,**  
 move.  
**mulier, -eris, f.,** woman.  
**multitūdō, -dinis, f.,** multitude.  
**multus, -a, -um, adj.,** much; **pl.,**  
 many.  
**mūniō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itum,**  
 fortify.  
**mūnitiō, -ōnis, f.,** fortification.  
**mūnitus, -a, -um, adj.,** (*perf.*  
*pass. part. of mūniō*), fortified.  
**mūrus, -i, m.,** wall.

## N.

**nam, conj.,** for.  
**nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,** tell,  
 narrate.  
**nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum,** be  
 born.

**nātiō, -ōnis, f.,** nation.  
**nātūra, -ae, f.,** nature.  
**nātus, -ūs, m.,** birth. *Used*  
*only in abl. sing.; māiōrēs*  
*nātū, elders by birth, old*  
*men.*  
**nauta, -ae, m.,** sailor.  
**nāvis, -is, f.,** ship, boat.  
*-ne, enclitic interrog. particle,*  
*simply denoting a question;*  
*in indirect questions some-*  
*times whether.*  
**nē, negative particle,** that . . .  
 not, lest, not to; **nē . . .**  
**quidem,** not even.  
**necesse, indecl. adj.,** necessary.  
**nēmō, -inis, m.,** nobody, no one.  
*Not used in gen. and abl., the*  
*corresponding forms of nūllus*  
*being used instead.*  
**neque (nec), conj.,** and not, nor;  
**neque . . . neque,** neither . . .  
 nor.  
**niger, -gra, -grum, adj.,** black.  
**nihil, n., indecl.,** nothing.  
**nisi, conj.,** if not, unless.  
**nōbilis, -e, adj.,** noble, of high  
 birth, famous.  
**noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum,** harm,  
 injure.  
**nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, no supine,**  
 be unwilling.  
**nōmen, -minis, n.,** name.  
**nōn, adv.,** not.  
**nōnue, interrog. adv. (intro-**  
*ducing a question expecting*  
*the answer "yes"),* not?  
**noster, -tra, -trum, possess.**  
*pron., our.*  
**novus, -a, -um, adj.,** new.  
**nox, noctis, f.,** night.

**nāllus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, no, not any, no one.

**num**, *interrog. particle* (*expecting the answer "no"*), in indirect questions, whether.

**numerus**, -i, *m.*, number.

**nūntiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *report, announce*.

**nūntius**, -i, *m.*, messenger.

## O.

**ob**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of. **obses**, **obsidis**, *m.*, hostage.

**obtineō**, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, *hold*.

**occāsus**, -ūs, *m.*, setting; **sōlis occāsus**, sunset.

**occidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *kill*.

**occupō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *seize, take*.

**octōgintā**, *indecl. num. adj.*, eighty.

**omninō**, *adv.*, altogether, in all.

**omnis**, -e, *adj.*, all.

**oppidum**, -i, *n.*, town, walled town.

**oppūgnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *attack, storm*.

**opus**, **operis**, *n.*, work.

**orātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, oration.

**ōrdō**, **ordinis**, *m.*, rank, order.

**Orgetorix**, -igis, *m.*, Orgetorix, a Helvetian nobleman.

**ōrnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *adorn, deck*.

## P.

**palūs**, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, swamp.

**pār**, **paris**, *adj.*, equal.

**parcō**, -ere, **pepercī** (**parsī**), **parsūrus** (**parcītūrus**), *spare*.

**parēns**, -entis, *c.*, parent.

**pāreō**, -ēre, **pārui**, **pāritūrus**, *obey*.

**parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *prepare, furnish*.

**pars**, **partis**, *f.*, part.

**parvus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, small, little.

**passus**, -ūs, *m.*, pace; **mille passūs**, a Roman mile.

**pater**, **patris**, *m.*, father.

**patria**, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, native country.

**pauci**, -ae, -a, *adj.*, used almost exclusively in the plural, few.

**pāx**, **pācis**, *f.*, peace.

**pecūnia**, -ae, *f.*, money, wealth, (*originally cattle*; cf. **pecus**).

**pecus**, -oris, *n.*, flock, cattle.

**pedes**, **peditis**, *m.*, foot-soldier.

**pedester**, -tris, -tre, *adj.*, on foot, of infantry.

**pellō**, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, *repel, drive off*.

**per**, *prep. with acc.*, through.

**per**, *adv.*, in composition, very (*as per-facilis*, very easy).

**periculum**, -i, *n.*, peril, danger.

**peritus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, skilful, experienced.

**persequor**, -sequi, **secūtus sum**, *pursue*.

**persuādeō**, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade*.

**pertineō**, -ēre, -ui, *no supine*, hold through, extend.

**perturbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *disturb greatly*.

**pervenio**, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, *come through, arrive*.

**pēs, pedis, m.,** foot, as part of the body, and also as a measure.

**petō, -ere, -ivī, -itum,** seek, ask.  
**pictūra, -ae, f.,** picture, painting.

**pilum, -i, n.,** javelin.

**poēta, -ae, m.,** poet.

**polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum,** promise.

**pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum,** place, put.

**pōns, pontis, m.,** bridge.

**populus, -i, m.,** people, nation.

**porta, -ae, f.,** gate, door.

**portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,** carry.

**portus, -ūs, m.,** port, harbor.

**possum, posse, potuī, no supine,** be able, can, have power.

**post, prep. with acc.,** after, behind; also *adv.*, afterwards.

**posterus, -a, -um, adj.,** next, following.

**pōstulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,** demand.

**potēns, potentis, adj.,** powerful.

**potestās, -tātis, f.,** power.

**potior, potirī, potitus sum,** get possession of.

**praeferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum,** carry before, prefer.

**praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum,** place before, put in command of.

**praesidium, -i, n.,** guard, escort, protection.

**praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus,** command, be at the head of.

**prīmus, -a, -um, adj.,** first.

**prīnceps, principis, m.,** chief.

**prior, prius, adj.,** earlier, former.

**prō, prep. with abl.,** before, for.

**Procillus, -i, m.,** a Roman name. *Gaius Valerius Procillus was sent by Caesar as envoy to Ariovistus.*

**proellum, -i, n.,** battle.

**profectiō, -ōnis, f.,** departure.

**proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum,** set out, depart.

**prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum,** go (or come) forth or forward.

**prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitum,** hinder, keep from.

**properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,** hurry.

**propior, propius, adj.,** (*comp.* of stem of *prope*, near), nearer; *superl.* **proximus, -a, -um.** nearest, next.

**propter, prep. with acc.,** on account of.

**prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus,** be profitable.

**prōvincia, -ae, f.,** province.

**proximus. See propior.**

**pūblicus, -a, -um, adj.,** public.

**puella, -ae, f.,** girl.

**puer, pueri, m.,** boy.

**pūgna, -ae, f.,** fight, battle.

**pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,** fight.

**pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj.,** beautiful, pretty.

**putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,** think.

## Q.

**quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj.,** forty.

**quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum,** ask, inquire about.

**quam, adv.,** than, as.

**quantus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, *interrog.*, how great? how much? *rel.*, as great, as; **tantus** . . . **quantus**, so great . . . as.  
**quārtus**, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral adj.*, fourth.  
**quattuor**, *indecl. numeral adj.*, four.  
**-que**, *enclitic conj.*, and, to be translated before the word at the end of which it stands.  
**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what; *indef.*, any.  
**quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam**, *indef. pron.*, a certain (one, etc.).  
**quidem**, *conj.* Often not to be translated, except by emphasizing the word before it; sometimes, indeed, at least; **nē** . . . **quidem**, not even.  
**quīn**, *conj.*, that, but that.  
**quīnque**, *indecl. numeral adj.*, five.  
**quīntus**, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral adj.*, fifth.  
**quis**, **quae**, **quid**, *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what?  
**quis**, **quae** (**qua**), **quid**, *indef. pron.*, used after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, and **num**, any, any one, any thing.  
**quisquam**, **quidquam**, *indef. pron.*, used only after negatives and negative expressions, any one, anything.  
**quisque**, **quaeque**, **quidque**, *indef. pron.*, each, each one, every.  
**quot**, *indecl. pron.*, *interrog.*, how many? *relative*, as many as.

## R.

**recip̄lō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take back; also *reflexive*, **sē recipere**, betake oneself, retire, withdraw, retreat.  
**redeō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, go back, return.  
**rēgīna**, -ae, *f.*, queen.  
**regiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, region.  
**rēgnū**, -ī, *n.*, kingdom, royal power.  
**rellinquō**, -linquere, -liquī, -litum, leave.  
**reliquus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, remaining, rest of.  
**remanēō**, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, remain, stay.  
**renūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, report, announce.  
**reperiō**, -īre, **repperī**, **repertum**, find, find out.  
**rēs**, **rei**, *f.*, thing.  
**resistō**, -ere, **restiti**, *no supine*, resist, withstand.  
**respondeō**, -ēre, **respondī**, **respōnsum**, answer, reply.  
**rēs pūblica**, **rei pūblīcae**, *f.* (really a noun, **rēs**, and *adj.*, **pūblica**, the public thing), state.  
**retineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, retain, hold back.  
**revertor**, **revertī**, **reversus sum** and **revertō**, -ere, -vertī, -versum, the deponent forms used in the present system, return, go or come back.  
**rēx**, **rēgis**, *m.*, king.  
**Rhēnus**, -ī, *m.*, the Rhine, dividing Gaul from Germany.

**Rhodanus**, -i, *m.*, the Rhone,  
*a river of southern Gaul.*

**rīpa**, -ae, *f.*, bank of a river,  
shore of a lake.

**Rōma**, -ae, *f.*, Rome.

**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Roman;  
*masc. as subst.*, a Roman.

**rosa**, -ae, *f.*, rose.

## S.

**saepe**, *adv.*, often.

**salūs**, -ūtis, *f.*, safety.

**satis**, *adv.*, enough.

**sciō**, scire, scivī, scītum, know.

**scribō**, -ere, scripsī, scriptum,  
write.

**scūtum**, -i, *n.*, shield.

**secundus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, second,  
favorable; *rēs secundae*, prosper-  
ity.

**sed**, *conj.*, but.

**semper**, *adv.*, always.

**senātus**, -ūs, *m.*, senate.

**senex**, senis, *m.*, old man.

**Sēquanus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of  
or belonging to the Sequani,  
*a Gallic tribe*; *masc. as*  
*subst.*, a Sequanian; *pl.*, the  
Sequani.

**sequor**, sequī, secūtus sum,  
follow.

**serva**, -ae, *f.*, female slave, maid-  
servant.

**servus**, -i, *m.*, slave, servant.

**sex**, *indecl. numeral adj.*, six.

**sexāgintā**, *indecl. numeral adj.*,  
sixty.

**sextus**, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral*  
*adj.*, sixth.

**sī**, *conj.*, if.

**sīgnum**, -i, *n.*, sign, standard,  
signal.

**silva**, -ae, *f.*, woods, forest.

**similis**, -e, *adj.*, like, similar.

**sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without.

**sinister**, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left  
(hand, etc.).

**socius**, -i, *m.*, ally.

**sōl**, sōlis, *m.*, the sun.

**soleō**, -ēre, solitus sum, be  
accustomed.

**sōlus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone.

**soror**, sorōris, *f.*, sister.

**spēs**, speī, *f.*, hope, expectation.

**statim**, *adv.*, immediately.

**stō**, stāre, steti, statūrus,  
stand.

**sub**, *prep. usually with abl.*,  
under, at the foot of, close to;  
*used with the acc. after verbs of*  
*motion.*

**sui**, sibi, sē, *reflexive pron. of the*  
*third person*; *no nom.*, him-  
self, herself, itself, him, her, it.

**sum**, esse, fui, futūrus, be.

**summus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, highest,  
topmost, greatest, *often at the*  
*top of or to the top of (superl.*  
*of the root of superus).*

**superō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, de-  
feat.

**supersum**, -esse, -fui, -futūrus,  
be over, survive.

**superus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, upper,  
higher; *comp.*, superior;  
*superl.*, summus.

**sūspiciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion.

**sūspiciō**, -spicere, -spēxi, -spec-  
tum, suspect.

**sustineō**, -ēre, -ui, -tentum,  
hold up (under), withstand.



**suus, -a, -um, possess. pron.,**  
third person, his, her, its,  
their.

## T.

**tam, adv.,** so, so greatly, so  
much.

**tamen, adv.,** nevertheless, still,  
yet, notwithstanding.

**tantus, -a, -um, adj.,** so great.

**tēlum, -i, n.,** (missile) weapon.

**tempestās, -tātis, f.,** storm, tem-  
pest.

**tempus, -oris, n.,** time.

**teneō, -ēre, -ui, tentum, hold.**

**terra, -ae, f.,** earth, land.

**terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, frighten.**

**tertius, -a, -um, ordinal numeral**  
**adj.,** third.

**timeō, -ēre, -ui, no supine,**  
fear.

**timor, -oris, m.,** fear, alarm.

**Titus, -i, m.,** Titus, a Roman  
name.

**tōtus, -a, -um, adj.,** whole, en-  
tire, all.

**trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give**  
over, betray.

**trāns, prep. with acc.,** across.

**trānseō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go**  
across, cross.

**trecentī, -ae, -a, numeral adj.,**  
three hundred.

**trēs, tria, numeral adj.,** three.

**tū, tui, tibi, tē, personal pron.,**  
second person, thou, you; *pl.*,  
**vōs, you.**

**turris, -is, f.,** tower, turret.

**tūtus, -a, -um, adj.,** safe.

**tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj.,** second  
person, thy, your.

## U.

**ubi, adv., interrog. and rel.,**  
where (sometimes when).

**undique, adv.,** on or from all  
sides.

**ūnus, -a, -um, (gen. ūnūs),**  
numeral adj., one, (sometimes  
the only one, alone).

**urbs, urbis, f.,** city.

**ūsus, -ūs, m.,** use; also need.

**ut, conj., with subj.,** that, in order  
that, so that; also *adv.*, as,  
when.

**ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, use, employ.**

**uxor, -oris, f.,** wife.

## V.

**valeō, -ēre, valui, valitūrus, be**  
strong.

**vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lay**  
waste.

**vectīgal, -ālis, n.,** tax.

**vēlōciter, adv.,** swiftly.

**vēlōx, -ōcis, adj.,** swift.

**veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum, come.**

**ventus, -ī, m.,** wind.

**vereor, -ēri, veritus, fear, be**  
afraid of.

**Vergilius, -ī, m.,** Virgil, a Roman.

**vērus, -a, -um, adj.,** true.

**vescor, -ī, eat.**

**vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj.,**  
your.

**vicēsīmus, -a, -um, ordinal**  
numeral, twentieth.

**victor, -oris, m.,** conqueror,  
victor.

**vicus, -ī, m.,** village.

**videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see.**

**vigilia**, -ae, *f.*, watch.

**vigintī**, *numeral adj.*, twenty.

**vincō**, -ere, **vici**, **victum**, conquer.

**vir**, **viri**, *m.*, man.

**virgō**, -inis, *f.*, maiden, virgin.

**virtūs**, -ūtis, *f.*, virtue.

**vis**, **vis**, *f.*, force; *pl.*, **virēs**, **virium**, strength.

**vītō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, avoid.

**vīvō**, -ere, **vixi**, **victum**, live.

**vocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call.

**volō**, **velle**, **volui**, wish, be willing.

**voluntās**, -ātis, *f.*, will, good will.

**voluptās**, -ātis, *f.*, pleasure.

**vōs**. See **tū**.

**vōx**, **vōcis**, *f.*, voice.

**vulnerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wound.

**vulnus**, -eris, *n.*, wound.



# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

The figures 1, 2, 3, or 4 after a verb denote that the verb is regular and of the first, second, third, or fourth conjugation. Other abbreviations are the same as those used in the Latin-English vocabulary.

### A.

<b>able</b> (be), possum, posse, potui.	<b>advantage</b> , ūsus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
<b>about</b> , dē ( <i>with abl.</i> ), circum ( <i>with acc.</i> ), circiter ( <i>adv.</i> ).	<b>adverse</b> , adversus, -a, -um.
<b>absent</b> (be), absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus.	<b>adversity</b> , rēs (rērum, <i>etc.</i> ) adversae.
<b>abundance</b> , cōpia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	<b>advice</b> , cōsilium, -ī, <i>n.</i>
<b>accomplish</b> , efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.	<b>Aeduan</b> (Haeduan), Aeduus, -ī, <i>m.</i>
<b>account</b> (on account of), causā ( <i>with gen.</i> ), ob, propter ( <i>with acc.</i> ).	<b>against</b> , cōtrā ( <i>with acc.</i> ), in ( <i>with acc.</i> ).
<b>accuse</b> , accūsō, 1.	<b>age</b> , aetās, -ātis, <i>f.</i> ; <b>in or by age</b> , nātū.
<b>accustom</b> (oneself), cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum.	<b>agreeable</b> , grātus, -a, -um.
<b>accustomed</b> (be), solēō, -ēre, solitus sum ( <i>semi-dep.</i> ); cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum.	<b>aid</b> , auxilium, -ī, <i>n.</i> , iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum; prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus.
<b>across</b> , trāns ( <i>with acc.</i> ).	<b>all</b> , omnis, -e; <b>in all</b> , omnīnō ( <i>adv.</i> ).
<b>act</b> , agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.	<b>Allobroges</b> , Allobrogēs, -um, <i>m.</i>
<b>active</b> , ācer, ācris, ācre.	<b>almost</b> , ferē.
<b>admire</b> , mīror, 1, <i>dep.</i>	<b>alone</b> , sōlus, -a, -um.
<b>adorn</b> , ōrnō, 1.	<b>already</b> , iam.
<b>advance</b> , prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum.	<b>also</b> , etiam.
	<b>although</b> , cum.
	<b>altogether</b> , omnīnō.
	<b>always</b> , semper.
	<b>am.</b> See <b>be</b> .

**ambassador**, *lĕgātus*, -ī, *m.*  
**among**, *inter* (*with acc.*), *apud* (*with acc.*).  
**ancient**, *antīquus*, -a, -um.  
**and**, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, -que; **and not**, *neque* (*nec*).  
**animal**, *animal*, -ālis, *n.*  
**announce**, *nūntiō*, 1; *renūntiō*, 1.  
**another**, *alius*, -a, -um; **belong to another**, *aliēnus*, -a, -um.  
**answer**, *respondeō*, -ēre, -dī, *re-sponsum*.  
**any (body or thing)**, *aliquis*, -qua *or* -quae, -quid, (*also quis, qua or quae, quid*).  
**approach**, *adventus*, -ūs, *m.*  
**ardent**, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.  
**Arlovistus**, *Arlovistus*, -ī, *m.*  
**arms**, *arma*, -ōrum, *n. pl.*  
**army**, *exercitus*, -ūs, *m.*  
**around**, *circum* (*with acc.*); **put around**, *circumdō*, -dare, -dedī, -datum.  
**arouse**, *incitō*, 1.  
**arrival**, *adventus*, -ūs, *m.*  
**arrive**, *perveniō*, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.  
**art**, *ars*, *artis*, *f.*; **art of war**, *rēs militāris*.  
**as**, *quam*, *cum*.  
**ascertain**, *reperiō*, -īre, *repperī*, *reperitum*.  
**ask**, *petō*, -ere, *petīvī*, *petitum*; *quaerō*, -ere, *quaesīvī*, *quaesitum*.  
**assemble**, *conveniō*, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.  
**assert**, *cōfirmō*, 1.  
**assist**, *iuvō*, -āre, *iūvī*, *iūtum*.  
**astonished (be astonished)**, *mīror*, 1, *dep.*

**at**, *in* (*with abl.*).  
**Athens**, *Athēnae*, -ārum, *f. pl.*  
**attack**, *impetus*, -ūs, *m.*, *op-pugnō*, 1; **make an attack**, *impetum facere*.  
**attend**, *adimadvertō*, -ere, -vertī, -versum.  
**attention (pay)**. *See attend.*  
**away**, *ā* (*ab*), *and, in composition*, *dē*; **lead away**, *ēdūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum; *dēdūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum; **go away**, *abeō*, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum; **send away**, *dīmittō*, -ere, -mīsī, -missum; **be away**, *absum*, -esse, *āfuī*, *āfutūrus*, *dēsum*, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.

## B.

**back**, *re-* *in comp.*, *as*: **take back**, *recipiō*, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; **go back**, *redeō*, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum; **hold back**, *retineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.  
**bad**, *malus*, -a, -um.  
**baggage**, *impedimenta*, -ōrum, *n. pl.*  
**bank**, *ripa*, -ae, *f.*  
**barbarian**, *barbarus*, -ī, *m.*  
**battle**, *proelium*, -ī, *n.*; *pūgna*, -ae, *f.*  
**be**, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*.  
**bear**, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*; **bear against**, *inferō*, *inferre*, *intulī*, *illātum*. *See, also, bring.*  
**beautiful**, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum.  
**because of**, *ob*, *propter*.  
**become**, *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*.

**before**, ante, *prep. with acc.* ; ante, *adv.* ; antequam, *conj.*  
**began**, coepī, coepisse (*no present*).  
**beginning**, initium, -ī, *n.*  
**behalf** (*in behalf of*), prō (*with abl.*).  
**Belgians**, Belgae, -ārum, *m.*  
**believe**, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum.  
**Bellovacī**, Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m.*  
**between**, inter (*with acc.*).  
**Bibracte**, Bibracte, -is, *n.*  
**bind**, teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum.  
**birth**, nātus, -ūs, *m.* ; **of high birth**, nōbilis, -e.  
**black**, niger, -gra, -grum.  
**blame**, culpō, 1.  
**body**, corpus, -oris, *n.*  
**book**, liber, -brī, *m.*  
**born** (be), nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum.  
**bound**, contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.  
**boy**, puer, -ī, *m.*  
**brave**, fortis, -e.  
**bravely**, fortiter.  
**bravery**, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*  
**bridge**, pōns, pontis, *m.*  
**bring**, portō, 1, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum ; **bring together**, cōnfero, -ferre, contulī, collātum ; **bring out**, efferō, efferre, extulī, elātum.  
**Britain**, Britannia, -ae, *f.*  
**Briton**, Britannus, -ī, *m.*  
**broad**, lātus, -a, -um.  
**brother**, frāter, -tris, *m.*  
**but**, sed, autem ; **but that**, quā.

C.

**Cæsar**, Caesar, -aris, *m.*  
**call**, vocō, 1, appellō, 1 ; **call together**, convocō, 1.  
**camp**, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*  
**can**, possum, posse, potuī.  
**captive**, captīvus, -ī, *m.*  
**capture**, capiō, capere, cēpī, captum. *See also take.*  
**care** (take), cūrō, 1.  
**carry**, portō, 1, (*see, also, bring and bear*) ; **carry before**, praeferō, -ferre, tulī, lātum.  
**cart**, carrus, -ī, *m.*  
**Casticus**, Casticus, -ī, *m.*  
**cause**, causa, -ae, *f.* ; cūrō, 1.  
**cavalry**, equitātus, -ūs, *m.* ; equitēs, -um, (*pl. of eques*), *m.*  
**cavalry-man**, eques, -itis, *m.*  
**celebrated**, clārus, -a, -um.  
**censure**, culpō, 1.  
**centurion**, centuriō, -onis, *m.*  
**certain**, certus, -a, -um ; **a certain** (*indefinite*), quīdam.  
**change**, commūtatiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**character**, nātūra, -ae, *f.*  
**check**, prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitum.  
**cheerfully**, libenter.  
**chief**, princeps, -ipis, *m.* ; **commander-in-chief**, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*  
**children**, liberī, -ōrum, *m.*  
**Cicero**, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*  
**citizen**, civis, -is, *m.*  
**city**, urbs, urbis, *f.*  
**cohort**, cohors, -tis, *f.*  
**collect**, cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum.  
**come**, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum ;

- come together**, *conveniō, -īre, -venī, -ventum*; **come out**, *ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum*.  
**command**, *iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssum*; *imperō, 1*; *praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus*; **place in command**, *praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum*.  
**commander-in-chief**, *imperātor, -ōris, m*.  
**companion**, *comes, -itis, c*.  
**conceal**, *cēlō, 1*.  
**conference**, *colloquium, -ī, n*.  
**confidence**, *fidēs, -eī, f*.  
**confusion (throw into)**, *perturbō, 1*.  
**conquer**, *superō, 1*; *vincō, vincere, vicī, victum*.  
**conqueror**, *victor, -ōris, m*.  
**consider**, *dēliberō, 1*.  
**consul**, *cōnsul, -ulis, m*.  
**consult**, *dēliberō, 1*.  
**contend**, *contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum*.  
**Corinth**, *Corinthus, -ī, f*.  
**Cornelia**, *Cornēlia, -ae, f*.  
**council**, *concilium, -ī, n*.  
**country**, *terra, -ae, f*; **native country**, *patria, -ae, f*; **country, as distinguished from city**, *rūs, rūris, n*.  
**cross**, *trāseō, -īre, -iī, -itum*.  
**crown**, *corōna, -ae, f*.  
**culture**, *hūmānitās, -ātis, f*.  
**custom**, *mōs, mōris, m*.
- D.**
- daily**, (*adv.*) *cottidiē, (adj.) cottidiānus, -a, -um*.  
**danger**, *perīculum, -ī, n*.  
**dare**, *audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, (semi-dep.)*.  
**daughter**, *filia, -ae, f*.  
**day**, *diēs, -eī, m*.  
**dear**, *cārus, -a, -um*.  
**decide**, *cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum*.  
**deck**, *ōrnō, 1*.  
**deep**, *altus, -a, -um*.  
**deeply (i.e. seriously)**, *graviter*.  
**defeat**, *superō, 1, vincō, -ere, vicī, victum*.  
**defend**, *dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsūm*; **in defence of**, *prō, prep. with abl.*  
**deliberate**, *dēliberō, 1*.  
**delight**, *dēlectō, 1*.  
**demand**, *pōstulō, 1*.  
**demonstrate**, *dēmōnstrō, 1*.  
**departure**, *profectiō, -ōnis, f*.  
**depth**, *altitūdō, -inis, f*.  
**desert**, *relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum*.  
**determine**, *cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum*.  
**difficult**, *difficilis, -e*.  
**diligence**, *dīligentia, -ae, f*.  
**distant (most)**, *extrēmus, -a, -um*.  
**distant (be)**, *absum, -esse, āfuī, āf tūrus*.  
**disturb greatly**, *perturbō, 1*.  
**divide**, *dividō, -ere, -visī, -vīsum*.  
**Divitiacus**, *Divitiacus, -ī, m*.  
**do**, *faciō, facere, fēcī, factum*; *agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum*.  
**door**, *porta, -ae, f*.  
**doubt**, *dubitō, 1*; **there is no doubt**, *nōn dubium est*.  
**doubtful**, *dubius, -a, -um*.  
**dove**, *columba, -ae, f*.

**draw up**, cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.

**drive**, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum;  
**drive back**, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.

**Dumnorix**, Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*

**dwell in**, incolō, -ere, -coluī, -cultum.

**E.**

**eager**, ācer, ācris, ācre.

**eagle**, aquila, -ae, *f.*

**early**, mātūrē, *adv.*

**easily**, facile.

**easy**, facilis, -e.

**eat**, vescor, -ī, *no perf.*

**eighty**, octōgintā.

**eminent**, clārus, -a, -um.

**encamp**, cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum.

**encourage**, animum (animōs) cōnfirmō, *l.*

**end**, finis, -is, *m.*

**endeavor**, cōnor, *l. dep.*

**endure**, sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

**enemy**, hostis, -is, *m.*; inimīcus, -ī, *m.*

**engage (in battle)**, committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, (proelium).

**enjoy**, fruor, fruī, fruitus *and* fructus sum.

**enough**, satis.

**entire**, tōtus, -a, -um.

**envoy**, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

**equal**, pār, paris.

**escort**, praesidium, -ī, *n.*

**even**, etiam; **not even**, nē . . . quidem.

**every (one)**, quisque, quaeque, quidque.

**exhort**, hortor, *l. dep.*

**expect**, expectō, *l.*

**experienced**, perītus, -a, -um.

**extend**, pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

**extreme**, māximus, -a, -um; extrēmus, -a, -um.

**F.**

**fable**, fābula, -ae, *f.*

**fall**, dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.

**faith**, fidēs, -eī, *f.*

**faithful**, fidus, -a, -um.

**fall**, cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum;

**fall upon**, accidō, -ere, -cidī;

**fall into**, **in with**, **upon**, incidō, -ere, -cidī.

**famous**, nōbilis, -e; clārus, -a, -um.

**far**, longē.

**farmer**, agricola, -ae, *m.*

**farther**, longius, (*adv.*).

**farthest**, extrēmus, -a, -um.

**father**, pater, patris, *m.*

**favor**, faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum.

**favorable**, secundus, -a, -um.

**fear**, timor, -ōris, *m.*; timeō, -ēre, -uī; vereor, -ērī, veritus sum.

**few**, paucī, -ae, -a.

**field**, ager, agrī, *m.*

**fifth**, quintus, -a, -um.

**fight**, pūgnō, *l.*

**fill**, compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.

**find out**, reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum.

**finish**, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fec-tum.

**fire**, ignis, -is, *m.*



**first**, *primus*, -a, -um.  
**five**, *quīnque*.  
**flee**, *fugiō*, *fugere*, *fūgī*.  
**flight**, *fuga*, -ae, *f.* [sum.  
**follow**, *sequor*, *sequī*, *secūsus*  
**following** (*of time*), *posterus*,  
 -a, -um.  
**fond of** (*be*), *amō*, *l.*  
**food**, *frūmentum*, -i, *n.*  
**foot**, *pēs*, *pedis*, *m.*  
**foot-soldier**, *pedes*, -itis, *m.*  
**for**, *prō* (*with abl.*), *prep.*; *nam*,  
*conj.*  
**force**, *vīs*, *vīs*, *vī*, *vim*; *pl.* *vīrēs*,  
*vīrium*, *f.*  
**forced** (*march*), *māximus*, -a,  
 -um.  
**forces** (*military*), *cōpiæ*, -ārum,  
*f.*  
**forest**, *silva*, -ae, *f.*  
**fortification**, *mūnitiō*, -ōnis, *f.*  
**fortified**, *mūnītus*, -a, -um,  
*(perf. part. of mūniō)*.  
**fortify**, *mūniō*, -ire, -ivī, -itum.  
**fortune**, *fortūna*, -ae, *f.*  
**forty**, *quadrāgintā*.  
**four**, *quattuor*.  
**fourth**, *quārtus*, -a, -um.  
**free**, *liber*, -era, -erum; *set free*,  
*liberō*, *l.*  
**friend**, *amicus*, -ī, *m.*  
**friendship**, *amicitia*, -ae, *f.*  
**frighten**, *terreō*, *2.*  
**from**, *ā*, *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, (*all with abl.*).  
**furthest**. *See farthest*.  
**fury**, *impetus*, -ūs, *m.*

## G.

**Galba**, *Galba*, -ae, *m.*  
**Gallie**, *Gallīcus*, -a, -um.

**garden**, *hortus*, -ī, *m.*  
**garland**, *corōna*, -ae, *f.*  
**gate**, *porta*, -ae, *f.*  
**gather**, *legō*, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctum*; *colligō*, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctum*.  
**Gaul** (*the country*), *Gallia*, -ae,  
*f.*; (*an inhabitant of that*  
*country*), *Gallus*, -ī, *m.*  
**gay**, *laetus*, -a, -um.  
**general**, *imperātor*, -ōris, *m.*  
**Geneva**, *Genāva*, -ae, *f.*  
**German**, *Germānus*, -a, -um, (*as*  
*subst.*, *Germānus*, -ī, *m.*).  
**get possession of**, *potior*, -īrī,  
 -ītus *sum*.  
**gift**, *dōnum*, -ī, *n.*  
**girl**, *puella*, -ae, *f.*  
**give**, *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datum*.  
**give up**, *trādō*, -ere, *didī*, *ditum*.  
**glad**, *laetus*, -a, -um.  
**gladly**, *libenter*.  
**go**, *eō*, *īre*, *ī* (*ivī*), *itum*; **go**  
*out or away*, *exeō*; **go back**,  
*redeō*; **go across**, *trāuseō*; **go**  
*away*, *abeō*; **go out**, *ēgre-*  
*dior*, -ī, *-gressus sum*; **go forth**,  
*prōgredior*, -ī, *-gressus sum*.  
**good**, *bonus*, -a, -um.  
**grain**, *frūmentum*, -ī, *n.*  
**great**, *māgnus*, -a, -um; **so great**,  
*tantus*, -a, -um; **how great**,  
*quantus*, -a, -um.  
**greater**, *māior*, *māius*, *gen.*  
*māiōris*.  
**Greece**, *Graecia*, -ae, *f.*  
**Greek** (*adj.*), *Graecus*, -a, -um;  
*(subst.)* *Graecus*, -ī, *m.*  
**grief**, *dolor*, -ōris, *m.*  
**grieve**, *be grieved*, *doleō*, *2.*  
**guard**, *custōs*, -ōdis, *c.*; *praesid-*  
*ium*, -ī, *n.*

**H.**

**halt**, cōsistō, -ere, -stitī.  
**hand**, manus, -ūs, *m.*  
**hand over**, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.  
**Hannibal**, Hannibal, -alis, *m.*  
**harbor**, portus, -ūs, *m.*  
**harm**, noceō, 2.  
**hasten**, contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum; properō, 1.  
**have**, habeo, 2.  
**head**, caput, -itis, *n.*  
**hear**, audiō, 4.  
**heavy**, gravis, -e.  
**height**, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*  
**help**, auxilium, -ī, *n.*; iuvō, -āre, iūvi, iūtum.  
**Helvetian**, Helvētius, -ī, *m.*  
**her**, suus, -a, -um, (*reflexive*); eius (*gen. of is, not reflexive*).  
**herself**, (*reflexive*), suī, sibi, sē, sē; (*intensive*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.  
**high**, altus, -a, -um; superus, -a, -um, (*superl. summus*); of high birth, nōbilis, -e.  
**hill**, collis, -is, *m.*  
**himself**, (*reflexive*), suī, sibi, sē, sē; (*intensive*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.  
**hinder**, prohibeo, 2; impediō, 4.  
**his**, suus, -a, -um, (*reflexive*); eius (*gen. of is, not reflexive*).  
**hold**, teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum;  
**hold together**, contineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum; **hold back**, retineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentum;  
**hold (in possession)**, obtineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentum.

**home**, domus, -ūs, *f.*; **at home**, domī.  
**Homer**, Homērus, -ī, *m.*  
**hope**, spēs, speī, *f.*  
**horn**, cornū, -ūs, *n.*  
**horse**, equus, -ī, *m.*  
**horseman**, eques, -itis, *m.*  
**hostage**, obses, -idis, *c.*  
**hour**, hōra, -ae, *f.*  
**house**, domus, -ūs, *f.*  
**how great**, quantus, -a, -um.  
**how many**, quot (*indecl.*).  
**huge**, ingēns, -entis.  
**hundred**, centum.  
**hurl**, iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum; coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum.  
**hurry**, properō, 1.

**I.**

**I**, egō, mei, mihi, mē, mē.  
**if**, si; **if not**, nisi.  
**illustrious**, clārus, -a, -um.  
**immediately**, statim.  
**impede**, impediō, 4.  
**in**, in (*with abl.*).  
**incredible**, incrēdibilis, -e.  
**induce**, adducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.  
**infantry** (*adj. = of infantry*), pedester, -tris, -tre.  
**influence**, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*; grātia, -ae, *f.*; adducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.  
**inform**, certiōrem faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.  
**inhabit**, incolō, -ere, -ui, -cultum.  
**inhabitant**, incola, -ae, *m.*  
**injure**, noceō, 2.  
**inquire (about)**, quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum.

**intend**, est in animō.  
**into**, in (*with acc.*).  
**island**, insula, -ae, *f.*  
**Italy**, Italia, -ae, *f.*  
**its**, suus, -a, -um, (*reflexive*);  
 eius (*gen. of is, not reflexive*).  
**itself** (*reflexive*), suī, sibi, sē, sē;  
 (*intensive*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

## J.

**javelin**, pīlum, -ī, *n.*  
**judge**, iūdex, -icis, *m.*  
**Julia**, Iūlia, -ae, *f.*  
**Jura**, Iūra, -ae, *m.*  
**just**, iūstus, -a, -um.

## K.

**keep**, contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.  
**keep from**, prohibeō, 2.  
**kill**, occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum;  
 interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.  
**kind**, genus, -eris, *n.*  
**king**, rēx, rēgis, *m.*  
**kingdom**, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*  
**knight**, eques, -itis, *m.*  
**know**, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum.

## L.

**Labienu**s, Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*  
**labor**, labor, -ōris, *m.*; labōrō, 1.  
**land**, terra, -ae, *f.*  
**language**, lingua, -ae, *f.*  
**large**, māgnus, -a, -um; multus, -a, -um.  
**law**, lēx, lēgis, *f.*; iūs, iūris, *n.*  
**lay waste**, vāstō, 1.

**lead**, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum;  
**lead away**, abdūcō, dēdūcō;  
**lead back**, redūcō; **lead out**, ēdūcō; **lead on**, indūcō, addūcō.

**leader**, dux, ducis, *m.* [tum.  
**leave**, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lic-  
**left** (*i.e. left hand, etc.*), sinister,  
 -tra, -trum; **left over** (*remaining*), reliquus, -a, -um.

**legion**, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*

**length**, longitūdō, -inis, *f.*

**lest**, nē.

**letter**, epistula, -ae, *f.*

**lieutenant**, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

**like**, similis, -e; *as verò*, amō, 1.

**line** (*of troops in motion*),  
 āgmen, -inis, *n.* (*of battle*);  
 aciēs, -ēī, *f.*

**live** (*i.e. live in, dwell*), incolō,  
 -ere, -uī, -cultum; **live** (*i.e. be alive*), vivō, -ere, vixī, victum.

**long**, longus, -a, -um; **a long time**, diū (*adv.*).

**lose**, āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum.

**love**, amō, 1.

**low**, inferus, -a, -um.

## M.

**made** (*be*), fiō, fierī, factus sum.

**magistracy**, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*

**magistrate**, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*

**magnitude**, māgnitūdō, -inis, *f.*

**maiden**, virgō, -inis, *f.*

**make**, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.

**man**, homō, -inis, *c.* (*a human being*); vir, -ī, *m.* (*an adult human male*).

**maniple**, manipulus, -ī, *m.*

**manners**, mōrēs, -um, *m.*, (*pl. of mōs*).  
**many**, multī, -ae, -a, (*pl. of multus*).  
**march**, iter, itineris, *n.*; **to march**, iter facere.  
**Marcus**, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*  
**marsh**, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*  
**Massilia**, Massilia, -ae, *f.*  
**master (of servants, etc.)**, dominus, -ī, *m.*; (**of pupils, etc.**), magister, -trī, *m.*  
**meeting**, concilium, -ī, *n.*  
**memory**, memoria, -ae, *f.*  
**merchant**, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*  
**messenger**, nūntius, -ī, *m.*  
**middle of**, medius, -a, -um.  
**military**, militāris, -e; **military service**, militia, -ae, *f.*; **military forces**, cōpia, -arum, *f.*  
**mind**, mēns, mentis, *f.*; **animus**, -ī, *m.*  
**mistress**, domina, -ae, *f.*  
**money**, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*  
**month**, mēnsis, -is, *m.*  
**mother**, māter, -tris, *f.*  
**mountain**, mōns, montis, *m.*  
**move**, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.  
**much**, multus, -a, -um.  
**multitude**, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*  
**my**, meus, -a, -um.

**N.**

**name**, nōmen, -inis, *n.*  
**narrowness**, angustiae, -arum, *f. pl.*  
**nation**, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**native country**, patria, -ae, *f.*

**nature**, nātūra, -ae, *f.*  
**necessary**, necesse, *indecl. adj.*  
**neighbor**, finitimus, -ī, *m.*  
**neighboring**, finitimus, -a, -um.  
**neither . . . nor**, neque (nec) . . . neque (nec).  
**nevertheless**, tamen.  
**new**, novus, -a, -um.  
**night**, nox, noctis, *f.*  
**no, no one**, nullus, -a, -um.  
**noble**, nōbilis, -e.  
**nobody**, nēmō, -inis, *m.*, (*not used in gen. and abl.*).  
**not**, nōn, nōne (*in questions*), nē (*in prohibitions, wishes, and final clauses*); **and not**, neque (nec); **not even**, nē . . . quidem.  
**nothing**, nihil, *n.*, (*indecl.*).  
**notice**, animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.  
**notwithstanding**, tamen.  
**now**, nunc, iam.  
**number**, numerus, -ī, *m.*

**O.**

**oath**, iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, *n.*  
**obey**, pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.  
**of, de** (*with abl.*).  
**often**, saepe.  
**old**, antiquus, -a, -um; **old man**, senex, senis, *m.*; **older**, māior nātū.  
**one**, ūnus, -a, -um; **one . . . another**, alius . . . alius; **one . . . the other (of two)**, alter . . . alter.  
**open**, apertus, -a, -um.  
**oration**, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

**order**, ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, (rank);  
imperium, -ī, *n.*, (command);  
**to order**, imperō, 1; iubeō,  
-ēre, iūssī, iūssum.

**Orgetorix**, Orgetorix, -īgis, *m.*

**other**, alius, -a, -ud; **other of**  
**two**, alter, -era, -erum.

**ought**, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

**our**, noster, -tra, -trum.

**over (be)**, praesum, -esse, -fuī,  
-futūrus.

**overcome**, superō, 1.

**owe**, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

## P.

**pace**, passus, -ūs, *m.*

**pain**, dolor, -ōris, *m.*; **be pained**,  
doleō, 2.

**parent**, parēns, parentis, *c.*

**parley**, colloquium, -ī, *n.*

**part**, pars, partis, *f.*

**peace**, pāx, pācis, *f.*

**people**, populus, -ī, *m.*

**perceive**, cōspiciō, -ere, -spexī,  
-spectum.

**perform**, fungor, -ī, fūctus  
sum.

**persuade**, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī,  
-suāsum.

**pick (from)**, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī,  
-lēctum.

**picture**, pictūra, -ae, *f.*

**pitch (a camp)**, pōnō, -ere,  
posuī, positum.

**place**, locus, -ī, *m.*, (*pl.*, loca,  
-ōrum, *n.*); pōnō, -ere, posuī,  
positum; **place over or in**  
**command**, praepōnō, -ere,  
-posuī, -positum; **to that**  
**place**, eō.

**plan**, cōsiliū, -ī, *n.*

**pleasant**, grātus, -a, -um.

**please**, dēlectō, 1.

**pleasing**, grātus, -a, -um.

**pleasure**, voluptās, -ātis, *f.*

**plenty**, cōpia, -ae, *f.*

**poem**, carmen, -inis, *n.*

**poet**, poēta, -ae, *m.*

**position**, locus, -ī, *m.*; **take**  
**a position**, cōsīdō, -ere,  
-sēdī, -sessum; cōsistō, -ere,  
-stitī.

**possession (get)**, potior, -īrī,  
-ītus sum.

**power**, potestās, -ātis, *f.*, impe-  
rium, -ī, *n.*; **royal power**,  
rēgnum, -ī, *n.*

**powerful**, potēns, -entis.

**praise**, laudō, 1.

**prefer**, mālō, mälle, mālūī; prae-  
ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.

**prepare**, parō, 1.

**present (be)**, adsum, -esse, affuī,  
affutūrus.

**Procillus**, Procillus, -ī, *m.*

**procure**, parō, 1.

**profitable (be)**, prōsum, prō-  
desse, prōfuī, -futūrus.

**promise**, polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus  
sum.

**proper**, idōneus, -a, -um.

**prosperity**, rēs (rērum, *etc.*)  
secundae.

**protect**, dēfendō, -ere, -dī,  
-fēnsū.

**protection**, praesidium, -ī, *n.*

**province**, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*

**public**, pūblicus, -a, -um.

**pupil**, discipulus, -ī, *m.*

**put around**, circumdō, -dare,  
-dedī, -datum.

**Q.**

**queen**, *rēgina*, -ae, *f.*  
**quick**, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*.  
**quickly**, *celeriter*.

**R.**

**rank**, *ōrdō*, -inis, *m.*  
**rapidity**, *celeritās*, -ātis, *f.*  
**read**, *legō*, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctum*.  
**ready**, *parātus*, -a, -um.  
**reason**, *causa*, -ae, *f.*  
**region**, *regiō*, -ōnis, *f.*  
**remain**, *maneō*, -ēre, *mānsī*, *mānsūrus* ; *remaneō*, -ēre, -*mānsī*, -*mānsūrus*.  
**remaining**, *reliquus*, -a, -um.  
**remember**, *memoriā teneō*, 2.  
**repell**, *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsum*.  
**reply**, *respondeō*, -ēre, -*dī*, *respōnsum*.  
**report**, *nūntiō*, 1 ; *renūntiō*, 1.  
**repulse**, *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsum*.  
**resist**, *resistō*, -ere, -*stitī*, *no supine*.  
**rest**, *quiēs*, -ētis, *f.* ; **the rest of**, *reliquus*, -a, -um.  
**restrain**, *contineō*, -ēre, -*tinuī*, -*tentum*.  
**retain**, *retineō*, -ēre, -*tinuī*, -*tentum*.  
**retire**. *See retreat*.  
**retreat**, *recipiō*, -ere, -*cēpī*, -*ceptum*, *with the refl. pronouns mē, sē, etc.*  
**return**, *revertor*, -ī, *reversus sum* ; *redeō*, -īre, -*īī*, -*itum*.  
**Rhine**, *Rhēnus*, -ī, *m.*

**Rhone**, *Rhodanus*, -ī, *m.*  
**right**, *iūs*, *iūris*, *n.* ; **right** (*hand, etc.*), *dexter*, -tra, -*trum*.  
**ripe**, *mātūrus*, -a, -um.  
**river**, *flūmen*, -inis, *n.*  
**Roman**, (*adj.*), *Rōmānus*, -a, -um ; (*subst.*), *Rōmānus*, -ī, *m.*  
**Rome**, *Rōma*, -ae, *f.*  
**rose**, *rosa*, -ae, *f.*  
**route**, *iter*, *itineris*, *n.*  
**row**, *ōrdō*, -inis.  
**royal power**, *rēgnum*, -ī, *n.*  
**run**, *currō*, *currere*, *cucurrī*, *cursum*.

**S.**

**safety**, *salūs*, -ūtis, *f.*  
**sailor**, *nauta*, -ae, *m.*  
**same**, *īdem*, *eadem*, *īdem*.  
**say**, *dicō*, -ere, *dixī*, *dictum*.  
**scout**, *explōrātōr*, -ōris, *m.*  
**sea**, *mare*, -is, *n.*  
**seashore**, *lītus*, -oris, *n.*  
**second**, *secundus*, -a, -um.  
**see**, *videō*, -ēre, *vidī*, *vīsum* ; *cōnspiciō*, -ere, -*spexī*, -*spectum*.  
**seek**, *petō*, -ere, *petivī*, *petitum*.  
**seize**, *occupō*, 1 ; *capiō*, -ere, *cēpī*, *captum*.  
**select**, *dēligō*, -ere, -*lēgī*, -*lēctum*.  
**self**, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*.  
**senate**, *senātus*, -ūs, *m.*  
**send**, *mittō*, -ere, *mīsī*, *missum* ; **send away**, *dīmittō*, -ere, -*mīsī*, -*missum*.  
**separate**, *dīvidō*, -ere, -*vīsī*, -*vīsum*.  
**Sequanian**, *Sēquanus*, -ī, *m.*  
**servant**, *servus*, -ī, *m.* ; *serva*, -ae, *f.*  
**set free**, *liberō*, 1.

**set out**, proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum.

**setting**, occāsus, -ūs, *m*.

**severe**, ācer, ācris, ācre; *gravis*, -e.

**sharp**, ācer, ācris, ācre.

**sharply**, ācritēr.

**shield**, scūtum, -ī, *n*.

**ship**, nāvis, -is, *f*.

**shore**, litus, -oris, *n*.

**short**, brevis, -e.

**shout**, clāmor, -ōris, *m*.

**show**, dēmōnstrō, 1.

**sides (on all sides)**, undique (*adv.*).

**sign**, sīgnum, -ī, *n*.

**similar**, similis, -e.

**since**, cum.

**sister**, soror, -ōris, *f*.

**six**, sex.

**sixth**, sextus, -a, -um.

**sixty**, sexāgintā.

**size**, māgnitūdō, -inis, *f*.

**skill**, ars, artis, *f*.

**skilful**, perītus, -a, -um.

**slaughter**, caedēs, -is, *f*.

**slave**, servus, -ī, *m*.; *serva*, -ae, *f*.

**slay**, occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum; interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

**slender**, gracilis, -e.

**small**, parvus, -a, -um.

**so (of degree)**, tam; **so . . . as**, tam . . . quam; **so (of manner or consequence)**, ita; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um.

**soldier**, miles, -itis, *m*.; **foot-**

**soldier**, pedes, -itis, *m*.

**somebody**, aliquis, -qua or -quae, -quid; quisquam, quidquam.

**something**, aliquis, -qua or -quae, -quid; quisquam, quidquam.

**son**, filius, -ī, *m*.

**song**, carmen, -inis, *n*.

**soul**, animus, -ī, *m*.

**spare**, parcō, -ere, pepercī (parsī), parsūrus (parcitūrus).

**speech**, orātiō, -ōnis, *f*.

**spend the winter**, hiemō, 1.

**spirit**, animus, -ī, *m*. [tum.

**spy**, cōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spec-stand, stō, stāre, steti, statum;

**stand one's ground, take a stand**, cōsistō, -ere, -stitī.

**standard**, signum, -ī, *n*.

**state**, civitās, -ātis, *f*.

**still (adv.)**, tamen.

**stone**, lapis, -idis, *m*.

**storm**, tempestās, -ātis, *f*.; *op-*pūgnō, 1; **take by storm**, expūgnō, 1.

**story**, fābula, -ae, *f*.

**strength**, vīs, vīs, vī, vim; *pl.* vīrēs, vīrium, *f*.

**strengthen**, cōfirmō, 1.

**strive**, contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum.

**strong (be)**, valeō, 2.

**suitable**, idōneus, -a, -um.

**summer**, aestās, -ātis, *f*.

**summon**, convocō, 1.

**sun**, sōl, sōlis, *m*.; **sunset**, sōlis occāsus, -ūs, *m*.

**superior (be)**, superō, 1.

**supplies**, commeātus, -ūs, *m*.

**surpass**, superō, 1.

**surrender**, dēditō, -ōnis, *f*.

**surrender (verb)**, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.

**surround**, circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum.

**suspicion**, sūspiciō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**swamp**, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*  
**swift**, celer, celeris, celere; vēlōx, vēlōcis.  
**swiftly**, vēlōciter.  
**swiftness**, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*  
**sword**, gladius, -ī, *m.*

**T.**

**table**, mēnsa, -ae, *f.*  
**take**, occupō, 1; capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; **take by storm**, expūgnō, 1; **take a position**, cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum; **consist**, cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī; **take back**, recipiō.  
**take care**, cūrō, 1.  
**tax**, vectigal, -ālis, *n.*  
**teacher**, magister, -trī, *m.*  
**tell**, nārō, 1.  
**tempest**, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*  
**ten**, decem (*indecl.*).  
**tenth**, decimus, -a, -um.  
**territory**, finēs, -ium, *m.*, (*pl. of finis*); ager, -grī, *m.*; terra, -ae, *f.*  
**than**, quam.  
**that**, ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id; **that (of yours)**, iste, ista, istud; **that, so that, in order that**, ut; **that not**, nē; **that, but that**, quā.  
**their**, suus, -a, -um, (*reflexive*), eōrum, eārum, (*gen. pl. of is, not reflexive*).  
**there**, ibi.  
**thing**, rēs, rei, *f.*  
**think**, putō, 1; arbitror, 1, *dep.*; existimō, 1; cōgitō, 1.  
**third**, tertius, -a, -um.  
**this**, hīc, haec, hōc.

**thither**, eō.  
**thou**, tū, tuī, tibi, tē, tū, tē.  
**thousand**, mille; *pl.*, milia.  
**three**, trēs, tria.  
**three hundred**, trecentī, -ae, -a.  
**through**, per (*with acc.*).  
**throw**, iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum; **throw together**, coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum; **throw into confusion**, perturbō, 1.  
**thy**, tuus, -a, -um.  
**time**, tempus, -oris, *n.*  
**tired**, dēfessus, -a, -um.  
**Titus**, Titus, -ī, *m.*  
**to**, ad, in (*with acc.*).  
**together**, con in composition, as **call together**, convocō, 1; **come together**, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; **throw together**, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.  
**toil**, labor, -ōris, *m.*; labōrō, 1.  
**tongue**, lingua, -ae, *f.*  
**top of**, summus, -a, -um.  
**tower**, turris, -is, *f.*  
**town**, oppidum, -ī, *n.*  
**tree**, arbor, -oris, *f.*  
**trust**, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum.  
**try**, cōnor, 1, *dep.*  
**turret**, turris, -is, *f.*  
**twentieth**, vicēsīmus, -a, -um.  
**twenty**, vīgintī.  
**two**, duō, -ae, -ō.  
**two hundred**, ducentī, -ae, -a.

**U.**

**under**, sub (*with abl. except after verbs of motion; then with acc.*).



**understand**, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.

**unfavorable**, adversus, -a, -um ;  
**alienus**, -a, -um.

**unhappy**, miser, -era, -erum.

**unless**, nisi.

**unwilling (be)**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.

**urge**, hortor, 1, *dep.*

**urge on**, incitō, 1.

**use**, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*

**use**, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.

**utmost**, māximus, -a, -um.

### V.

**valor**, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

**vast**, ingēns, -entis.

**very, to be expressed by the superl.**  
*or sometimes by per- in composition.*

**victor**, victor, -ōris, *m.*

**village**, vicus, -ī, *m.*

**violence**, vis, vīs, *f.*

**violent**, ācer, -cris, -cre.

**violently**, ācriter (*adv.*).

**Virgil**, Vergilius, -ī, *m.*

**virgin**, virgō, -inis, *f.*

**virtue**, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

**voice**, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

### W.

**wage war**, bellum gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum ; **wage offensive war**, bellum inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum.

**wait for**, exspectō, 1.

**wall**, mūrus, -ī, *m.*

**want**, inopia, -ae, *f.*

**war**, bellum, -ī, *n.*

**war-vessel**, nāvis longa.

**waste (lay waste)**, vāstō, 1.

**watch**, vigilia, -ae, *f.*

**water**, aqua, -ae, *f.*

**weapon**, tēlum, -ī, *n.*

**weary**, dēfessus, -a, -um.

**welcome**, grātus, -a, -um.

**welfare**, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*

**what (rel.)**, quī, quae, quod ;  
*(interrog.)*, quis, quae, quid.

**when**, cum.

**where**, ubi.

**whether**, num.

**which (rel.)**, quī, quae, quod ;  
*(interrog.)*, quis, quae, quid.

**white**, albus, -a, -um.

**who (rel.)**, quī, quae, quod ;  
*(interrog.)*, quis, quae, quid.

**whole**, tōtus, -a, -um.

**why ?** cūr.

**wide**, lātus, -a, -um.

**width**, lātitudō, -inis, *f.*

**wife**, uxor, -ōris, *f.*

**will**, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*

**willing (be)**, volō, velle, voluī.

**wind**, ventus, -ī, *m.*

**wing**, āla, -ae, *f.* ; **wing of an army**, cornū, -ūs, *n.*

**winter**, hiems, hiemis, *f.* ; **winter quarters**, hiberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.* ; **pass the winter**, hiemō, 1.

**wish**, volō, velle, voluī ; **wish more or rather**, mālō, mälle, mālūī.

**with**, cum (*with abl.*), apud (*with acc.*).

**withdraw (transitive)**, dēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum ; (*intrans.*), discēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum ;  
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum

<i>(reflexive with mē, tē, sē, etc.).</i>	<b>write</b> , scrībō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum.
<b>withstand</b> , sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.	<b>wrong</b> , iniūria, -ae, <i>f.</i>
<b>woman</b> , mulier, -eris, <i>f.</i> ; fēmina, -ae, <i>f.</i>	<b>Y.</b>
<b>wonder at</b> , mīror, 1, <i>dep.</i>	<b>year</b> , annus, -ī, <i>m.</i>
<b>woods</b> , silva, -ae, <i>f.</i>	<b>you</b> , tū ( <i>sing.</i> ), vōs ( <i>pl.</i> ).
<b>work</b> , opus, operis, <i>n.</i> ; labōrō, 1.	<b>your</b> , vester, -tra, -trum, ( <i>belong- to more than one</i> ); tuus, -a, -um, ( <i>belonging to one</i> ).
<b>worthy</b> , dignus, -a, -um.	<b>youth</b> ( <b>young person</b> ), adulēs- cēns, -entis, <i>m.</i> ; iuvenis, -is, <i>m.</i>
<b>wound</b> , vulnus, -eris, <i>n.</i> ; vul- nerō, 1.	
<b>wretched</b> , miser, -era, -erum.	

Announcement.

**THE STUDENTS' SERIES OF LATIN CLASSICS.**

UNDER THE EDITORIAL SUPERVISION OF

**ERNEST MONDELL PEASE, A.M.,**

*Leland Stanford Junior University,*

AND

**HARRY THURSTON PECK, PH.D., L.H.D.,**

*Columbia College.*

---

This Series will contain those portions of the Latin authors that are usually read in American schools and colleges; and to meet the growing demand for more liberal courses such other portions will be included as are well fitted for classroom use, but which have hitherto lacked suitable editions. In order to furnish permanent editions of uniform merit the work is distributed among a large number of special editors, and the several editions will be based for the most part upon approved German editions.

While thus profiting by the valuable results of German scholarship, which give the assurance of marked excellence to the Series, each editor will nevertheless verify all the statements of the original, and add to and alter them as much as may be necessary to adapt his work to the needs of American students.

The text will be carefully revised, and will be followed in a separate part of the book by a full commentary and index.

The Series will also contain elementary and supplementary works prepared by competent scholars. Every effort will be made to give the books a neat and attractive appearance.

The following volumes are now ready or in preparation :

- CATULLUS, Selections**, based upon the edition of Riese. By THOMAS B. LINDSAY, Ph.D., Professor in Boston University.
- CICERO, Tusculan Disputations, Books I and II.** By Professor PECK. *Nearly Ready.*
- CICERO, De Oratore, Book I**, based upon the edition of Sorof. By W. B. OWEN, Ph.D., Professor in Lafayette College.
- CICERO, Select Letters**, based in part upon the edition of Süpfle-Böckel. By Professor PEASE.
- GELLIUS, Selections.** By Professor PECK.
- HORACE, Odes and Epodes.** By PAUL SHOREY, Ph.D., Professor in the Chicago University. *Nearly Ready.*
- HORACE, Satires and Epistles**, based upon the edition of Kiessling. By JAMES H. KIRKLAND, Ph.D., Professor in Vanderbilt University. *Ready.*
- JUVENAL**, based upon the edition of Weldner. By HENRY CLARK JOHNSON, A.M., LL.B., President of the Central High School, Philadelphia.
- LIVY, Books XXI and XXII**, based upon the edition of Wölflin. By JOHN K. LORD, Ph.D., Professor in Dartmouth College. *Ready.*
- LUCRETIIUS, De Rerum Natura, Book III.** By W. A. MERRILL, Ph.D., Professor in the Indiana University.
- OVID, Selections from the Metamorphoses**, based upon the edition of Meuser-Egen. By B. L. WIGGINS, A.M., Professor in the University of the South. *Nearly Ready.*
- PETRONIUS, Cena Trimalchionis**, based upon the edition of Bücheler. By W. E. WATERS, Ph.D., Professor in the University of Cincinnati.
- PLAUTUS, Menæchmi**, based upon the edition of Brix. By HAROLD N. FOWLER, Ph.D., Professor in the Western Reserve University. *Ready.*
- QUINTILIAN, Book X and selections from Book XII**, based upon the edition of Krüger. By CARL W. BELSER, Ph.D., Professor in the University of Colorado.
- SALLUST, Catiline**, based upon the edition of Schmalz. By CHARLES G. HERBERMANN, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor in the College of the City of New York. *Ready.*

**SENECA, Select Letters.** By E. C. WINSLOW, A.M.

**TACITUS, Annals, Book I and selections from Book II,** based upon the edition of Nipperdey-Andresen. By E. M. HYDE, Ph.D., Professor in Lehigh University.

**TACITUS, Germania and Agricola,** based upon the editions of Schweizer-Sidler and Dräger. By A. G. HOPKINS, Ph.D., Professor in Hamilton College. *Ready.*

**TACITUS, Histories, Book I and selections from Books II-V,** based upon the edition of Wolff. By EDWARD H. SPIEKER, Ph.D., Professor in the Johns Hopkins University.

**TERENCE, Phormio,** based upon the edition of Dziatzko. By HERBERT C. ELMER, Ph.D., Assistant Professor in the Cornell University.

**TIBULLUS AND PROPERTIUS, Selections,** based upon the edition of Jacoby. By HENRY F. BURTON, A.M., Professor in the University of Rochester.

**VELLEIUS PATERCULUS, Historia Romana, Book II.** By F. E. ROCKWOOD, A.M., Professor in Bucknell University. *Ready.*

**LATIN COMPOSITION FOR COLLEGE USE.** By WALTER MILLER, A.M., Professor in the Leland Stanford Jr. University. *Ready.*

**HAND-BOOK OF LATIN SYNONYMS.** By Mr. MILLER.

**A FIRST BOOK IN LATIN.** By HIRAM TUELL, A.M., Principal of the Milton High School, Mass., and HAROLD N. FOWLER, Ph.D., Western Reserve University *Ready.*

**EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION, FOR SCHOOLS.** By M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M., Principal of Chauncy-Hall School, Boston. *Ready.*

**THE PRIVATE LIFE OF THE ROMANS,** a manual for the use of schools and colleges. By HARRIET WATERS PRESTON and LOUISE DODGE. *Ready.*

**ATLAS ANTIQUUS.** Twelve maps of the ancient world, for schools and colleges. By Dr. HENRY KIEPERT, M. R. Acad., Berlin. *Ready.*

Tentative arrangements have been made for other books not ready to be announced.

**LEACH, SHEWELL, & SANBORN,**  
Boston, New York, and Chicago.



19

**Acme Library Card Pocket**  
Under Pat. Sept. 26, '76, "Ref. Index File"  
**Made by LIBRARY BUREAU**  
530 ATLANTIC AVE., BOSTON

**Keep Your Card in this Pocket**



17  
9